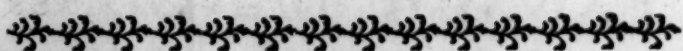
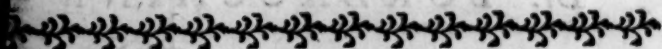


THE
PARISIAN MASTER

BY
Dr. BORZACCHINI.



 This Work is also to be had at
the AUTHOR's, No. 8, John-Street,
Queen-Square, Bath.



THE
PARISIAN MASTER;
OR,
A NEW AND EASY METHOD
FOR
ACQUIRING A PERFECT KNOWLEDGE
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE
IN A SHORT TIME,
DIVIDED INTO TWO PARTS:

CONTAINING
THE RUDIMENTS AND THE SYNTAX
OF THE LANGUAGE;
COMPOSED, DIGESTED, AND EXPLAINED,
IN A MORE CONCISE, ACCURATE, AND EASY MANNER
THAN ANY EVER YET ATTEMPTED.

By Dr. M. GUELF BORZACCHINI,

Professor of the French and Italian Languages.

BATH:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY R. CRUTTWELL, FOR THE AUTHOR;
SOLD ALSO

BY S. HAZARD, AND J. MARSHALL, IN BATH;
W. BROWN, AND J. LLOYD, BRISTOL;

AND C. DILLY, POULTRY, AND S. HAYES, NO. 332, OXFORD-
STREET, LONDON.

~~~~~  
MDCCLXXXIX.

Edue T 21517.89.4 \*

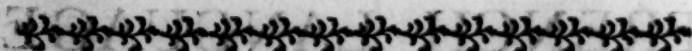
~~6255~~ 1870, Jan. 18.

6 Gift of

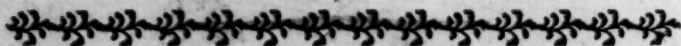
~~educt~~

~~1167.89.3~~

Henry W. Longfellow,  
of Cambridge.



[Whoever is desirous to know the  
Merit of this Work, and the Advan-  
tages arising from it, should read the  
Preface.]



By Dr. M. GUELLI BORZACCHINI

Professor of the French and Italian Languages

PRINTED AND SOLD BY J. B. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE,

AND ADAM

ST. MARK'S, AND J. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE,

OF NEW-YORK, AND J. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE,

AND J. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE, AND J. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE,

NEW-YORK, 1870.

AND J. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE,

AND J. BARNARD, 10, THE SQUARE,



T H E  
P R E F A C E.

**H**AVING been a long while employed in the study and art of teaching the French Language, I presume it will not be deemed arrogancy in me to have attempted a Grammar of the true French Tongue, that might supply the deficiency of others. Many Grammars have been written by different masters, and with different degrees of skill; but no one has yet fallen in my hands, by which the lowest expectation could be satisfied: some of their authors wanted industry, and some learning: some knew not their own defects, and some were too idle to supply them.

For this reason a new and easy method appeared yet to be wanting in these three Kingdoms, in which arts and sciences are so well cultivated and encouraged; and as I may, without presumption, claim to myself a longer acquaintance with the French language than any Grammarian has had, I shall hope to be considered as having more experience at least than most

of my predecessors; and therefore as more likely to furnish those who are desirous to learn that language, with such rules and observations as may enable them to surmount all difficulties, and even to avoid any mistake whatever.

When I quitted my profession of Counsellor, and, pursuing my natural taste and propensity to Languages, undertook to teach them, I made use of Boyer's Grammar for want of a better. But as that work had been published about a century before, and consequently contained imperfect rules, improper terms, and an obsolete phraseology and orthography, I found it necessary to compose a New Method of teaching the French, for the sole use of my Scholars, in order to forward them with more facility and in a shorter time; and I have for many years seen this desirable end answered.

The repeated solicitations of my friends and scholars, who approved of my particular method of instructing youth, joined with the good success which my Italian Grammar, composed in French, and published a few years since, had met with, have induced me to offer to the Public this Grammar, composed in a more plain and easy manner than any ever yet attempted. In comparing it with others of the  
same



same kind published within the last fifty years, it will be found to have several advantages. The rules of this New Method, as opposed to others, are more diligently digested, more accurately arranged, and more faithfully explained, with a great number of examples, which not only render them more easy and clear, but also contain most of the necessary words and phrases to be known, in preference to a Vocabulary, which is very disagreeable and tedious to be learnt by heart.

This work is divided into two parts: the first contains the Rudiments of the Language, methodically digested, which lead the beginner by degrees to an acquaintance with those parts that are most essential for him to know: the second, called the Syntax, treats of the construction and signification of words and sentences, with a particular attention to the elegancies and peculiarities in writing and speaking, more recently adopted by the Parisians, who are by common consent allowed to speak the language with the greatest purity and correctness, and therefore are the best examples for the imitation of the learner; and the same arrangement is preserved in both parts, that scholars may find without trouble, in the syntax,

tax, what concerns the same subject treated in the Rudiments.

I have sometimes neglected the most elegant way in translating the French examples into English, because when the translation is literal, it is more advantageous to scholars, as they may thus better understand the genius of the language which they learn. At other times, in speaking about an important rule, I have purposely repeated the same example several times, because when the subject proposed is to make one part of speech agree with another, the rule is better understood by the repetition of the example in which the gender or number is changed.

Another considerable advantage which I should hope would be found in this method is, that nothing has been neglected; it therefore contains rules which, though highly important, either have not been mentioned by other Grammarians, or have been treated in a cursory and unintelligible manner. And if this Grammar should appear too voluminous, I desire the reader to observe, that the examples laid down after each rule make one half of this volume, and that it has been printed with a large and elegant type, unusual for works of  
this



this kind, and without sparing paper, that the learner might be incited to read and study it with more application.

If this work, the fruit of the long experience and labour of near thirty years, prove acceptable and useful to the Public, which, from the above circumstances, I dare flatter myself it will, then my aim will be accomplished; for I should undoubtedly never have attempted to compose and publish a New Method, had I not been fully persuaded that it was wanting at least for the instruction of my own scholars.

Although I am not a native of France, yet having been born in Tuscany, where the knowledge of the French and Latin languages makes a part of a liberal education, I acquired them both to perfection at an early period of my life; and since have resided upwards of twenty years in Paris, where I had the honour of instructing a great many of the English and French Nobility; the former in the Italian and French, and the latter in the Italian only; so that, excepting my tender years, I lived longer in France than in Italy, and I have been in the habits of teaching those languages about thirty years, partly in France, and partly in England, during which time I have had the agreeable  
satisfaction

fatisfaction of instructing many excellent scholars from all parts of the British dominions.

After having given an account of this work and of myself, and considering that teaching French is now become in England a profession of people of all sorts, totally unqualified for the task, I cannot avoid setting forth and subjoining here, for the advantage of the public, an idea of my Method, grounded both on reason and experience, and on which depends the whole success of those who wish to attain a perfect knowledge of the language.

A Master, having accurately taught the pronunciation, must chiefly insist upon his scholars learning well the rudiments of the language, and never suffer them to study any other subject before they thoroughly understand and can readily repeat what has been explained to them before. When his scholars are well acquainted with the declension of articles and pronouns, the conjugation of verbs both regular and irregular, and the concord or agreement of the parts of speech, they ought to translate an English book into French, with the assistance of their master, and at the same time analyze the terms of the translation, which is not only an exercise for putting in practice what they have learnt,

learnt, but also for acquiring the manner of construing words and sentences according to the rules and observations of the Syntax, which are then to be taught as the case requires it. After this improvement, they want some easy and familiar phrases, by which and the many words they learnt in the grammar, as well as in the translation, they can begin to talk, and then in a short time they will be able to speak pretty well, if they apply themselves to the reading of a good French book, and if their master converse with them solely in French. The only way of being perfected in the use of conversing is to translate at the end of their instruction a story or fable, which, after having been corrected by their master, they must repeat to him by heart the next day.

In a word, scholars, particularly children, must begin with the principles, proceed by the application, and finish by the practice of them. Besides, by studying the rules of grammar, they begin to reflect, to have their understanding opened, to exert their tender genius, and thereby render themselves capable of studying in time more difficult sciences. Any method whatever, contrary to the above-mentioned, would be prejudicial to children, and rather retard

retard than forward them: they learn fast when they learn well.

It is a great abuse introduced in most schools to force beginners to talk nothing but French to one another; they must either speak wrong, or condemn themselves to silence. The masters, on the other hand, being at a loss to satisfy the expectations of the parents, presently begin by making them learn words and phrases, and labour hard to beat into their heads as many common sentences as they can, pretty near after the same manner as parrots are instructed. Those parents who are unacquainted with the language, are charmed with the supposed improvement of their children, and think them great proficient. They recommend the school as one of the best for learning; and thus the master gets his end, but in truth the children know nothing, and the parents are deceived and imposed upon, without considering that, though the terms of a guinea a quarter appeared to them a trifling sum, yet they really spent for many years more money than if they had had a good master at home who would have instructed them completely in a few months.

One may daily see in schools (particularly those for the education of Young Ladies, where



where a woman teaches the French, though the grammatical knowledge has never been a business for women) pupils who have learnt the French for five or six years, and who pass with some for good scholars, on account of the readiness with which they express themselves; but they observe no concord at all, cannot so much as make one part of speech agree with another, and are utterly incapable of writing four lines, or even to make sense of half a page of a common French book: In short, they know no more than the words and phrases of their own books.

I conclude with my answer to the question frequently put to a French master, *How long a scholar ought to learn?* that it depends upon the capacity and application of the learner, who, possessing these advantages, and chusing a good master, may acquire a perfect knowledge of the language in a very short time.



CON-



# C O N T E N T S.

|                                                |           |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>T</b> HE Preface — — —                      | Page<br>v |
| <b>PART I.</b><br><b>The FRENCH RUDIMENTS.</b> |           |
| Of the PRONUNCIATION — — —                     | I         |
| CHAP. I. Of the ARTICLE — — —                  | 28        |
| CHAP. II. Of the NOUN — — —                    | 32        |
| Substantive — — —                              | 33        |
| Adjective — — —                                | 40        |
| Comparative — — —                              | 42        |
| Superlative — — —                              | 46        |
| Of the Nouns of Number — — —                   | 48        |
| CHAP. III. Of the PRONOUN — — —                | 54        |
| Of the Pronouns Personal — — —                 | ib.       |
| Conjunctive — — —                              | 60        |
| Possessive — — —                               | 64        |
| Demonstrative — — —                            | 71        |
| Interrogative — — —                            | 77        |
| Relative — — —                                 | 80        |
| Improper — — —                                 | 91        |
| CHAP. IV. Of the VERB — — —                    | 94        |
| Of the Auxiliary Verbs — — —                   | 95        |
| The Conjugation of the Verb <i>Avoir</i> — — — | 96        |
| The Conjugation of the Verb <i>Etre</i> — — —  | 106       |
| Of the Regular Verbs — — —                     | 114       |
| An Example of the first Conjugation — — —      | 126       |
| An Example of the second Conjugation — — —     | 129       |
| An Example of the third Conjugation — — —      | 133       |
| An Example of the fourth Conjugation — — —     | 137       |
| Of the Verbs Active — — —                      | 141       |
| Passive — — —                                  | 142       |

|                                        |       |     |
|----------------------------------------|-------|-----|
| Of the Verbs Neuter                    | _____ | 143 |
| Reflected                              | —     | 144 |
| Impersonal                             | _____ | 150 |
| Of the Irregular Verbs                 | _____ | 157 |
| The Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs |       |     |
| in <i>er</i>                           | _____ | 167 |
| The Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs |       |     |
| in <i>ir</i>                           | _____ | 169 |
| The Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs |       |     |
| in <i>oir</i>                          | _____ | 183 |
| The Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs |       |     |
| in <i>re</i>                           | _____ | 196 |
| CHAP. V. Of the PARTICIPLE             | _____ | 228 |
| CHAP. VI. Of the ADVERB                | _____ | 234 |
| CHAP. VII. Of the PREPOSITION          | _____ | 250 |
| CHAP. VIII. Of the CONJUNCTION         | _____ | 253 |
| CHAP. IX. Of the INTERJECTION          | _____ | 257 |

## PART II.

|                                     |       |            |
|-------------------------------------|-------|------------|
| The French Syntax                   | _____ | 259        |
| Remarks on the Pronunciation        | —     | 260        |
| A Table of the Sounds of all French |       |            |
| Diphthongs and Triphthongs          | —     | 262        |
| Of the Orthography                  | _____ | 267        |
| CHAP. I. Of the ARTICLE             | —     | 274        |
| CHAP. II. Of the NOUN               | —     | 287        |
| Substantive                         | —     | <i>ib.</i> |
| Adjective                           | —     | 291        |
| Comparative                         | —     | 297        |
| Superlative                         | —     | 301        |
| Of the Nouns of Number              | —     | 302        |

|                                                                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>CHAP. III. Of the PRONOUN</b>                                                            | 307 |
| Of the Pronouns Personal                                                                    | 309 |
| Conjunctive                                                                                 | 316 |
| Possessive                                                                                  | 320 |
| Demonstrative                                                                               | 323 |
| Interrogative                                                                               | 326 |
| Relative                                                                                    | 327 |
| Improper                                                                                    | 339 |
| <b>CHAP. IV. Of the VERB</b>                                                                | 351 |
| Of the Government and Regimen of<br>French Verbs                                            | 357 |
| Of the Use, Signification, and Construc-<br>tion of the Tenses of French Verbs              | 374 |
| Of the Indicative Mood                                                                      | 375 |
| Of the Conjunctive Mood                                                                     | 389 |
| Of the Gerund                                                                               | 402 |
| Particulars with respect to the Use of<br>some French Verbs as compared with<br>the English | 410 |
| Of the Impersonal Verbs                                                                     | 418 |
| <b>CHAP. V. Of the PARTICIPLE</b>                                                           | 430 |
| <b>CHAP. VI. Of the ADVERB</b>                                                              | 435 |
| <b>CHAP. VII. Of the PREPOSITION</b>                                                        | 440 |
| <b>CHAP. VIII. Of the CONJUNCTION</b>                                                       | 459 |
| <b>CHAP. IX. Of the Interjection</b>                                                        | 464 |
| Of the Construction and Use of Negative<br>Words                                            | 465 |
| Of the Method of asking Questions                                                           | 472 |
| Of the Pronominal Particle <i>On</i>                                                        | 477 |
| An easy Method of learning a great<br>many thousand French Words                            | 479 |



A NEW AND EASY  
FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

PART I.

---

The FRENCH RUDIMENTS.

---

*Of the* PRONUNCIATION.

THERE is no Pronunciation so difficult for an English Learner as the French, because not only most letters found in that Language otherwise than in the English, but also many of them are often silent, and some require a peculiar motion of the mouth; to which we may add, that the French words are al-

B

most



most always written and spelt otherwise than they are founded.

The French Alphabet has twenty-five letters, which ought to be pronounced thus:

|       |     |         |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-----|---------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| àà    | bai | fai     | dai | ai  | èff | ſgeai |
| A     | B   | C       | D   | E   | F   | G     |
| ààſhe | ee  | ſgee    | kàà | èll | èmm | ènn   |
| H     | I   | J       | K   | L   | M   | N     |
| ò     | pai | kûû     | èrr | èſs | tai | ûû    |
| O     | P   | Q       | R   | S   | T   | U     |
| vai   | exc | ee grec | zed |     |     |       |
| V     | X   | Y       | Z   |     |     |       |

*Of the VOWELS.*

The Vowel *a* is commonly pronounced in French like the Vowel *a* in the English word *watch*,

Madame | MyLady || Amande | Almond.

The

The Vowel *a* requires a Circumflex Accent, thus (*â*), in the words in which formerly the Consonant *s* was written after the *a*, and then is founded as in *call*,  
Alabâtre | Alabaster || Pâte | Dough.

The Vowel *e* has in French, as in English, two different sounds; the one open, the other close.

The open *e* is to be pronounced like the Vowel *e* in the English word *bell*, and then it is known, either by being attended by a Consonant in the same syllable;

Terre | Earth || Selle | Saddle;

or by being marked over with a Grave Accent, thus (*è*);

Rivière | River || Lèvre | Lip.

The close *e* sounds always like the Vowel *a* in the English word *face*, and then is marked with an Acute Accent over it, thus (*é*)

École | School || Santé | Health.

The Vowel *e* requires a Circumflex Accent, in the words in which formerly

the letter *s* was written between the *e* and *t*, and then its sound is exceeding open.

✓ Ancêtres | Ancestors || Tête | Head.

Besides, the Vowel *e* is always mute, or silent, at the end of French words, like in English,

Tante | Aunt || Salade | Salad,  
without excepting these Monosyllables;

le, je, ce, de, me, te, fe, ne.

It is also silent when it comes before the letter *s*, which ends a word;

Dames | Ladies || Tasses | Cups.

But the following monosyllables, in which the *e* is sounded as if there were an Acute Accent over it, are to be excepted,

les, ces, des, mes, tes, fes.

It seems likewise mute at the end of a syllable, when no accent is used over it:

Promenade | Walk || Appetit | Appetite.

The Vowel *i* has always in French the  
very

very same sound as the *i* in the word *machine*, both English and French.

Edifice | Building || *écrivisse* | lobster.

The Vowel *o* is commonly pronounced in French like in the English word *elbow*,

|            |  |            |
|------------|--|------------|
| Metropole  |  | Metropolis |
| ✓ Horologe |  | Clock.     |

But it has properly two sounds; the one open, the other close. Its sound is open when it is followed by two *mm*, or two *nn*;

Homme | Man || Bonne | Good.

And its sound is close, like in the *o* of the English word *cold*, when it is followed by a single *m*, or a single *n*;

Ombre | Shadow || Oncle | Uncle.

The Vowel *o* requires a circumflex accent, thus (*ô*), in the words in which formerly the Consonant *s* was written after the *o*, and then is pronounced like the double *oo* in the English word *blood*.

Apôtre | Apostle || Côte | Coast.

The



The Vowel *u* has in French a very strange sound. It is pronounced like two *ûû* in English, by forcing the voice and rounding the mouth;

|           |  |           |
|-----------|--|-----------|
| Multitude |  | Multitude |
| Tumulte   |  | Tumult;   |

Particularly when it is marked with a Circumflex Accent, thus (*û*)

Sûreté | Security || Mûre | Ripe.

---

#### *Of the DIPHTHONGS and TRIPHTHONGS.*

The Diphthong *ai* is commonly pronounced in French like the Vowel *e* in the English word *bell*.

✓ Naissance | Birth || Vinaigre | Vinegar.

However, it is to be sounded like a close *é*, and consequently like the Vowel *a* in the English word *face*, at the end of the first person singular of the preter-perfect definite, in Verbs ending in the Infinitive Mood in *er*, such as *parler*, and *aimer*.

Je

Je parlai | I spoke || J'aimai | I loved.

And at the end of the first person singular of the Future Tense:

|             |  |               |
|-------------|--|---------------|
| Je parlerai |  | I shall speak |
| J'aimerai   |  | I will love.  |

But when the Vowels *a* and *i* come together, with two dots over the *i*, thus (*ï*), then they do not form a Diphthong, the *a* being commonly pronounced like a close *é*, separately from the *i*, which is distinctly heard, in order to shew two different syllables.

|          |  |            |
|----------|--|------------|
| Païsan   |  | Countryman |
| Païement |  | Payment.   |

The letter *y* is sometimes used instead of the Vowel *ï* marked with two dots, and then the letters *ay* sound like the Vowels *aï*; therefore, the last words may likewise be written thus;

Payfan, Payement.

At other times both letters *aï* or *ay* keep their natural sound; and then the *y* is

is looked upon as a Consonant rather than a Vowel.

✓ Naïvetè | Simplicity || Ayeul | Grandfather.

The Diphthong *au* is always founded in French like the Vowel *o* in the English word *cold*.

Autel | Altar || Épaule | Shoulder.

In the Diphthong *ea* we only pronounce the Vowel *a*, softened by the Vowel *e*.

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| Il logea  |  | He lodged   |
| Il mangea |  | He did eat. |

The Triphthong *eai* is always pronounced like the French close *é* in *école*.

|             |  |            |
|-------------|--|------------|
| Je nageai   |  | I swam     |
| Je changeai |  | I changed. |

The Triphthong *eau* has always the same sound as the Vowel *o* in the English word *elbow*.

Beauté | Beauty || Vaiffeau | Ship.

The Diphthong *ei* is always pronounced like the French open *è*, and consequently like the Vowel *e* in the English word *bell*.

Reine

Reine | Queen || Ceinturon | Belt.

But the Vowels *ei* do not form a Diphthong, when the *e* is marked with an accent, or two dots, thus (*é* or *ë*), and then one vowel is sounded separately from another:

|          |  |               |
|----------|--|---------------|
| Obéir    |  | To obey       |
| Reïterer |  | To reiterate. |

In the Diphthong *eo* the Vowel *e* serves only to make soft the Vowel *o*, like in English.

George | George || Pigeon | Pigeon.

The Triphthong *eoï* is commonly pronounced like an *o* and a French open *è* joined together, and sounded distinctly one after another;

Villageois | Villager || Nageoir | Fin.

But it is to be sounded like a French open *è* at the end of persons singular of the Preter-Imperfect of the Indicative Mood in Verbs ending in the Infinitive in *ger*, such as *neiger*, and *songer*:

|             |  |             |
|-------------|--|-------------|
| Il neigeoit |  | It snowed   |
| Il songeoit |  | He thought. |



The Diphthong *eu* has a very confused sound, something like the Vowel *u* in the English words *must*, *much*, or *dust*. It is, therefore, to be pronounced by forcing the voice, shutting the mouth, and founding as fast as possible both vowels in only one impulse of voice:

Aveugle | Blind || Beurre | Butter.

It is pronounced as the French Vowel *u* in a very few words, and in the conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb *avoir* (to have)

Gageure | Wager || Il eut | He had.

But the Vowels *eu* do not form a Diphthong when the *e* is marked with two dots, and then one vowel is sounded separately from another, to shew two syllables.

Réunir | To reunite || Réussir | To succeed.

The Vowels *ia* make a Diphthong only in these three words:

|        |  |               |                                                                   |
|--------|--|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Diacre |  | Deacon        | } In which both vowels<br>are sounded by one<br>impulse of voice. |
| Fiacre |  | Hackney-Coach |                                                                   |
| Diable |  | Devil         |                                                                   |

But

But in the rest they are pronounced separately, each of them making a syllable:

Diamant | Diamond || Viande | Meat.

In the Diphthong *ie* both vowels are also founded, but the Vowel *e*, having a Grave Accent over it, is exceeding open:

Nièce | Neice || Siècle | Age.

But when the Vowels *ie* come at the end of a French word, the *e* takes pretty near the sound of another *i*;

Academie | Academy || Comedie | Comedy.

In the Diphthong *io*, both vowels are likewise pronounced according to their natural and proper sound:

|                |  |          |
|----------------|--|----------|
| Nous écrivions |  | We wrote |
| Opinion        |  | Opinion. |

Though the Vowels *oe* come sometimes together in the middle of French words, yet they never form a Diphthong, each of them making a distinct syllable, and the *e* being therefore marked with two dots:

Poëte | Poet || Moële | Marrow.

In

In the Triphthong *oeu*, the Vowel *o* is always dropt; it is therefore pronounced like the Diphthong *eu*:

Soeur | Sister      || Moeurs | Manners.

The Diphthong *oi* is commonly pronounced like an *o* and a French open *e* joined together, and sounded distinctly one after another:

Roi | King      || Poisson | Fish.

In the Present Tenses and Infinitive Moods of the French Verbs ending in *oir* or *oire*, the Diphthong *oi* has the sound above-mentioned:

|        |  |            |  |          |  |            |
|--------|--|------------|--|----------|--|------------|
| Devoir |  | To owe     |  | Je dois  |  | I owe      |
| Croire |  | To believe |  | Je crois |  | I believe. |

But the same Diphthong *oi* is to be pronounced like a French open *e*, in all French Verbs, at the end of the three persons singular of the Preter-Imperfect Tense;

Je parlois | Tu parlois | Il parloit.

And at the end of the three persons singular

gular of the uncertain or conditional Tense,

Je parlerois | Tu parlerois | Il parleroit.

It has the same sound in the Present Tenses and Infinitive Moods of the irregular Verbs ending in *ôître*:

|           |           |            |           |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Connoître | To know   | Je connois | I know    |
| Paroître  | To appear | Je paroiss | I appear. |

Which sound is kept through all Tenses.

|                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| Je connoissois | Je paroissois  |
| Je connoîtrai  | Je paroîtrai   |
| Je connoîtrois | Je paroîtrois. |

In such Verbs, ending in the Infinitive in *ôître*, the Vowel *i*, when followed by the Consonant *t*, requires a circumflex accent over it, because an *s* was formerly written between the *i* and *t*.

The sound of a French open *e* is likewise given to the three Vowels *oie*, in the last syllable of the third person plural of the Preter-Imperfect Tenses of all French Verbs:

Ils parloient | Elles aimoient.

And



And in the last syllable of the third person plural of the Conditional Tenses,

Il<sup>s</sup> parleroient | Elles aimeroient.

In the Diphthong *oo*, both vowels have their natural sound, and are pronounced separately,

|           |  |               |
|-----------|--|---------------|
| Coobliger |  | To cooblige   |
| Cooperer  |  | To cooperate. |

The Diphthong *ou* is always pronounced in French like the Vowel *u* in the English word *pull*.

The English have the same Diphthong and Articulation in *could*.

Courroux | Anger || Pantouffes | Slippers.

The Diphthong *ue* comes at the end of a few French words, in which the final *e* takes the sound of another *u*, and requires two dots over it.

Moruë | Salt cod || Charruë | Plough.

It comes at other times between the Consonants *c* or *g*, and the syllable *il*, and then it is sounded like the Diphthong *eu* in *deuil*.

Cueillir

Cueillir | To gather || Orgueil | Pride.

The sound of the Diphthong *ui* is so clearly heard, that the Vowel *u* is pronounced separately from the Vowel *i*.

Minuit | Midnight || Fruit | Fruit.

### *Of the CONSONANTS.*

Among the French Consonants, the letters *l, m, n, r*, are liquid; so called, because they are pronounced with a smoother tone of voice than the others.

A Consonant at the end of French words is commonly dropt, if another Consonant begins the next word:

|                   |  |                |
|-------------------|--|----------------|
| Comment vous por- |  | How do you do? |
| tez-vous?         |  |                |

But we commonly pronounce the last Consonant before words beginning with a vowel, or *b* mute,

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Vous avez entendu des |  | You have heard pretty |
| jolies histoires      |  |                       |
|                       |  | stories.              |

However,

However, the last Consonant sometimes is not pronounced for the sake of better sound, though a vowel follows:

|                   |  |                |
|-------------------|--|----------------|
| Un enfant aimable |  | An amiable boy |
| Un rang eminent   |  | A high rank.   |

When there are many Consonants at the end of a word, we only pronounce the first;

|          |  |         |  |        |  |          |
|----------|--|---------|--|--------|--|----------|
| Corps    |  | Body    |  | Champs |  | Fields.  |
| épinards |  | Spinage |  | Front  |  | Forehead |

And sometimes we pronounce none of them.

Doigts | Fingers || Respects | Respects.

When the Consonant *c* is followed by any vowel whatever, to form the syllables *ca*, *ce*, *ci*, *co*, *cu*, it has the same sound as in English:

|        |  |             |  |        |  |        |
|--------|--|-------------|--|--------|--|--------|
| Calcul |  | Calculation |  | Celeri |  | Celery |
| Citron |  | Lemon       |  | Corde  |  | Rope.  |

When the letter *ç*, with a little stroke under it, is followed by the Vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*, to form the syllables *ça*, *ço*, *çu*, it is to be sounded like the double *ss* in the English word *cross*.

Façade

|         |  |            |  |        |  |           |
|---------|--|------------|--|--------|--|-----------|
| Façade  |  | Fore front |  | Garçon |  | Boy       |
| Soupçon |  | Suspicion  |  | Reçu   |  | Received. |

The Consonants *ch* have always in French the same sound as the English Consonants *sh* in *shall*, *shell*, *shift*, *shop*, *shut*:

|        |  |         |  |          |  |         |
|--------|--|---------|--|----------|--|---------|
| Chasse |  | Hunting |  | Cheval   |  | Horse   |
| Chien  |  | Dog     |  | Chose    |  | Thing   |
| Chute  |  | Fall    |  | Dimanche |  | Sunday. |

The Consonant *d* is pronounced like a *t* at the end of words, when a Vowel, or *b* mute, begins the next word:

|                       |  |                        |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------|
| Quand il vit ce grand |  | When he saw that great |
| homme.                |  | man.                   |

The Consonant *g*, joined with the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, to form the syllables *ga*, *go*, *gu*, has a hard sound like in English.

But when the letter *g* is joined with the Vowels *e* or *i*, to form the syllables *ge* or *gi*, it is pronounced as if an *s* was before *g*, thus (*fg*)

|       |  |       |  |          |  |           |
|-------|--|-------|--|----------|--|-----------|
| Gelée |  | Frost |  | Religion |  | Religion. |
|-------|--|-------|--|----------|--|-----------|



The Consonant *g* requires a very hard sound, if it is followed by the letter *m*:

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| Augmenter |  | To increase |
| ✓ Enigme  |  | Enigma.     |

But when it is joined with the liquid *n* following it, thus (*gn*), its sound is so softened by touching the palate with the tongue, that the Consonants *gn*, in the syllables *gna*, *gne*, *gni*, *gno*, *gnu*, are to be pronounced just as the syllable *ni* in the English word *minion*:

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| Agneau     |  | Lamb        |
| Digne      |  | Worthy      |
| Magnifique |  | Magnificent |
| Ignorant   |  | Ignorant.   |

The letter *b*, in the beginning of French words derived from the Latin, or having any likeness to the English, is mute, and not aspired at all:

Heritier | Heir    || Hopital | Hospital.

These four only are to be excepted;

Harpe, Hazard, Hero, Hareng.

But

But it is founded with an aspiration  
in words purely and merely French:

|          |  |              |
|----------|--|--------------|
| Haricots |  | French beans |
| Honte    |  | Shame.       |

We must except the only word *heureux*  
(happy), and its derivatives, in which  
the letter *b* is silent.

It is also aspirate in the middle of  
words:

Souhaiter | To wish || Trahison | Treason.

The Consonant *j*, which always be-  
gins a syllable, has in French the same  
sound as the letter *g*, when followed by  
the Vowels *e* or *i*, and consequently like  
the Consonants *sg*. Therefore the sylla-  
bles *ja*, *je*, *jo*, *ju*, are to be pronounced as  
if they were written *sgea*, *sgeai*, *sgeo*, and  
*sgeu*:

|       |  |        |  |       |  |        |
|-------|--|--------|--|-------|--|--------|
| Jambe |  | Leg    |  | Jeune |  | Young  |
| Joli  |  | Pretty |  | Juge  |  | Judge. |

The letter *l* is almost always founded  
at the end of words:

|     |  |        |  |       |  |        |
|-----|--|--------|--|-------|--|--------|
| Fil |  | Thread |  | Royal |  | Royal. |
|-----|--|--------|--|-------|--|--------|

It is very feldom dropt or filent:

Avril | April || Fufil | Gun || Gril | Gridiron.

The liquids *m* and *n* are always nafal at the end of words:

Faim | Hunger || Humain | Human.

The Confonant *f* keeps always its natural found in the beginning of French words:

|        |  |         |  |        |  |         |
|--------|--|---------|--|--------|--|---------|
| Santé  |  | Health  |  | Sucre  |  | Sugar   |
| Soldat |  | Soldier |  | Severe |  | Severe: |

But it is commonly pronounced like a *z* between two vowels,

Chemife | Shirt || Prifon | Prifon.

A double *fs* is always pronounced in French as the double *fs* in the English word *lofs*:

Sageffe | Wifdom || Poffeffion | Poffeffion.

The fame found of a double *fs* is given in French to the Confonant *t*, when it is joined to the Diphthongs *ia*, *ie*, or *io*, following it:

Martial

|          |  |          |  |           |  |           |
|----------|--|----------|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Martial  |  | Martial  |  | Essentiel |  | Essential |
| Patience |  | Patience |  | Ambition  |  | Ambition  |

But the letter *t* keeps its natural sound and proper articulation, though followed by one of the above Diphthongs,

1. In Verbs and Participles:

|                         |  |                       |  |                 |  |          |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|--|-----------------|--|----------|
| Nous étions             |  | We were               |  | Vous étiez      |  | You were |
| Elle est sortie         |  |                       |  | She is gone out |  |          |
| Elles ont été diverties |  | They have been amused |  |                 |  |          |

2. When the letter *t* is immediately preceded by the Consonant *s*;

|             |  |              |
|-------------|--|--------------|
| Bestiaux    |  | Cattle       |
| Indigestion |  | Indigestion. |

3. When the syllable *ti* goes immediately before the syllable *en*;

|            |  |              |
|------------|--|--------------|
| Il tiendra |  | He will hold |
| Le tien    |  | Thine.       |

4. In Nouns Substantive ending in *tie*, in *tié*, or in *tier*;

|        |  |      |  |        |  |            |
|--------|--|------|--|--------|--|------------|
| Partie |  | Part |  | Amitié |  | Friendship |
| Moitié |  | Half |  | Metier |  | Calling;   |

Except only

|         |  |           |
|---------|--|-----------|
| Minutie |  | A trifle. |
|---------|--|-----------|

The



In the syllable *em*, the Vowel *e* sounds like the *a* in the English word *watch*;

Femme | Woman || Temple | Temple.

Thus is likewise pronounced the Vowel *e* in the syllable *en*;

|             |  |               |
|-------------|--|---------------|
| Entendement |  | Understanding |
| Dent        |  | Tooth.        |

But if the Vowel *e* is followed by two *nn*, it keeps commonly its proper sound;

Ennemi | Enemy || Hennir | To neigh.

Except only these two words, in which the Vowel *e* takes the sound of an *a*;

Ennuyer | To trouble || Ennobler | To enoble.

The Vowel *e* keeps generally its natural sound in the syllable *en*, when the Vowel *i* goes before it:

Chirurgien | Surgeon || Musicien | Musician.

However, the words *expedient*, *Orient*, and *client*, and Nouns ending in *ience*, in which the Vowel *e* sounds like an *à*, are to be excepted:

Experience

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| Experience |  | Experience  |
| Conscience |  | Conscience. |

The syllable *ent*, which ends always the third person plural of almost all the Tenses of French Verbs, is dropt or mute:

|                           |  |                          |  |                             |
|---------------------------|--|--------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Il <sup>s</sup> parlent   |  | Il <sup>s</sup> aiment   |  | Il <sup>s</sup> marchent    |
| Il <sup>s</sup> parlerent |  | Il <sup>s</sup> aimerent |  | Il <sup>s</sup> marcherent. |

In the syllables *er* and *ez*, at the end of words, the sound of the Vowel *e* is close, as if an acute accent were over it:

|           |  |        |  |        |  |          |
|-----------|--|--------|--|--------|--|----------|
| Chevalier |  | Knight |  | Cocher |  | Coachman |
| Pensez    |  | Think  |  | Affez  |  | Enough.  |

But we must except a few words and monosyllables, in which the Vowel *e* is open, and the letter *r* is strongly articulated:

|       |  |        |  |         |  |       |
|-------|--|--------|--|---------|--|-------|
| Hiver |  | Winter |  | Cuiller |  | Spoon |
| Mer   |  | Sea    |  | Fer     |  | Iron. |

In the syllable *et*, at the end of French words, the Vowel *e* is open:

|       |  |         |  |          |  |         |
|-------|--|---------|--|----------|--|---------|
| Valet |  | Footman |  | Pistolet |  | Pistol. |
|-------|--|---------|--|----------|--|---------|

In the syllables *im* and *in*, the Vowel *i*  
is

is to be pronounced like the *e* in the English word *length*.

|           |  |         |  |           |  |           |
|-----------|--|---------|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Imprimeur |  | Printer |  | Impatient |  | Impatient |
| Prince    |  | Prince  |  | Epingle   |  | Pin.      |

But when the Vowel *i* is followed by two *mm* or two *nn*, it keeps its natural sound and proper articulation;

Immense | Immense || Innocent | Innocent.

The syllables *gue* and *gui* found in French like the syllables *ge* and *gi* in the English words *finger* and *give*. The English have the same syllable and articulation in *fatigue*;

Langue | Tongue || Guitarre | Guittar;

Except the only Noun *aiguille*, and Derivatives in which the syllable *gui* is pronounced as *gwi*.

In the syllables *qua*, *que*, *qui*, and *quo*, the letters *qu* are to be sounded like a *k*:

|         |  |           |  |          |  |              |
|---------|--|-----------|--|----------|--|--------------|
| Qualité |  | Quality   |  | Conquête |  | Conquest     |
|         |  | Equivoque |  |          |  | Equivocation |
|         |  | Quotidien |  |          |  | Daily.       |

In

In the syllables *um* and *un*, the Vowel *u* has always the same sound as the French Diphthong *eu*; that is, something like the Vowel *u* in the English word *must*:

|        |  |         |  |        |  |           |
|--------|--|---------|--|--------|--|-----------|
| Parfum |  | Perfume |  | Humble |  | Humble.   |
| Lundi  |  | Monday  |  | Chacun |  | Everyone. |







## CHAP. I.

### *Of the* ARTICLE.

**A**N Article in the French Language is a Particle to be prefixed to Nouns Substantive, in order to distinguish their Gender either Masculine or Feminine, and their Number either Singular or Plural.

The English Language has only one Article Definite; that is, *the*, which is used for both Genders and Numbers:

|             |  |              |
|-------------|--|--------------|
| The father  |  | The mother   |
| The fathers |  | The mothers. |

But in the French there are two Articles Definite, viz. *le* (the) for the Masculine Gender,

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| Le maître |  | The master |
| Le livre  |  | The book.  |

and *la* (the) for the Feminine:

|              |  |              |
|--------------|--|--------------|
| La maîtresse |  | The mistress |
| La plume     |  | The Pen.     |

Both make *les* (the) in the Plural Number:

|                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| Les maîtres    | The masters    |
| Les livres     | The books      |
| Les maîtresses | The mistresses |
| Les plumes     | The pens.      |

They are declined and varied thus:

# DECLENSION of ARTICLES.

## Singular.

|                                           |                                   |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Nominative.</i> Le Roi                 | The King                          |
| <i>Genitive.</i> Du Roi                   | Of the King                       |
| <i>Dative.</i> Au Roi                     | To the King                       |
| <i>Accusative.</i> Le Roi                 | The King                          |
| <i>Vocative.</i> ô Roi                    | O King                            |
| <i>Ablative.</i> Du Roi, or<br>par le Roi | From the King, or<br>by the King. |

## Plural.

|                                                       |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Les Rois                                  | The Kings                           |
| <i>Gen.</i> Des Rois                                  | Of the Kings                        |
| <i>Dat.</i> Aux Rois                                  | To the Kings                        |
| <i>Accu.</i> Les Rois                                 | The Kings                           |
| <i>Voc.</i> ô Rois                                    | O Kings                             |
| <i>Abla.</i> Des Rois, or<br>par le <sup>s</sup> Rois | From the Kings, or<br>by the Kings. |

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

|                                              |                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> La Reine                         | The Queen                           |
| <i>Gen.</i> De la Reine                      | Of the Queen                        |
| <i>Dat.</i> à la Reine                       | To the Queen                        |
| <i>Accu.</i> La Reine                        | The Queen                           |
| <i>Voc.</i> ò Reine                          | O Queen                             |
| <i>Abla.</i> De la Reine, or<br>par la Reine | From the Queen, or<br>by the Queen. |

*Plural.*

|                                               |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Les Reines                        | The Queens                            |
| <i>Gen.</i> Des Reines                        | Of the Queens                         |
| <i>Dat.</i> Aux Reines                        | To the Queens                         |
| <i>Accu.</i> Les Reines                       | The Queens                            |
| <i>Voc.</i> ò Reines                          | O Queens                              |
| <i>Abla.</i> Des Reines, or<br>par les Reines | From the Queens, or<br>by the Queens. |

When a French Noun begins with a Vowel, or *h* mute, the Articles *le* and *la* require an elision in the Singular Number, and are declined thus:

|                                                    |                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> L' Empereur                            | The Emperor                             |
| <i>Gen.</i> De l' Empereur                         | Of the Emperor                          |
| <i>Dat.</i> à l' Empereur                          | To the Emperor                          |
| <i>Accu.</i> L' Empereur                           | The Emperor                             |
| <i>Voc.</i> ò Empereur                             | O Emperor                               |
| <i>Abla.</i> De l' Empereur,<br>or par l' Empereur | From the Emperor,<br>or by the Emperor. |

|                                                         |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> L' Imperatrice                              | The Empress                             |
| <i>Gen.</i> De l' Imperatrice                           | Of the Empress                          |
| <i>Dat.</i> à l' Imperatrice                            | To the Empress                          |
| <i>Accu.</i> L' Imperatrice                             | The Empress                             |
| <i>Voc.</i> ô Imperatrice                               | O Empress                               |
| <i>Abla.</i> Del' Imperatrice,<br>or par l' Imperatrice | From the Empress,<br>or by the Empress. |

The Plural *les* cannot suffer the elision, because it ends with a Consonant;

|                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| Les Empereurs    | The Emperors   |
| Les Imperatrices | The Empresses. |

The English Prepositions *of, to, from, or by*, are said in French, *de, à, de, or par*; which we call Articles Indefinite, because they are used very often before Nouns Substantive of both Genders and Numbers, and always before proper names:

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Le frere de Louise    | The brother of Louisa |
| La soeur de Jacques   | The sister of James   |
| Il a écrit à Anne     | He wrote to Ann       |
| Elle a écrit à George | She wrote to George.  |





## CHAP. II.

### *Of the Noun.*

**A** Noun is in French, as in any other Language, a word which is used to express the name of persons or things; or to denote their good, bad, or indifferent qualities or properties: therefore a Noun is divided into Substantive and Adjective.

There are two Genders in French, viz. the Masculine and the Feminine.

The English distinguish only one sex from another, according to the primitive and proper use of Genders; and therefore ascribe no Gender to inanimate things. But the French observe that distinction even in inanimate things so strictly, that there is not one Noun in French but what is either Masculine or Feminine.

*Of*

*Of the NOUN SUBSTANTIVE.*

Any Noun Substantive whatever in French can have but two variations; the one of its Singular Number, the other of its Plural, which will be either both Masculine, or both Feminine, and are known by the addition of the article to either gender or number.

The Plural Number of Nouns Substantive is commonly made in French by adding the letter *s* to the Singular:

|            |  |            |
|------------|--|------------|
| L' homme   |  | The man    |
| La femme   |  | The woman  |
| Les hommes |  | The men    |
| Les femmes |  | The women. |

This rule, though general enough, has several exceptions.

1. Most Masculine Nouns, that end in *al*, or in *ail*, in the Singular Number, change their terminations into *aux* in the Plural:

|         |  |        |  |         |  |         |
|---------|--|--------|--|---------|--|---------|
| Animal  |  | Animal |  | Animaux |  | Animals |
| Travail |  | Work   |  | Travaux |  | Works.  |

D

2. Nouns

Nouns ending with a Diphthong or Triphthong, are commonly Masculine:

|            |         |            |         |
|------------|---------|------------|---------|
| Le feu     | Fire    | Le chou    | Cabbage |
| Le cheveu  | Hair    | Le clou    | Nail    |
| Le tableau | Picture | Le couteau | Knife:  |

But we must except several Nouns, among which these are mostly used:

|        |       |         |       |
|--------|-------|---------|-------|
| La foi | Faith | L' eau  | Water |
| La loi | Law   | La peau | Skin. |

Nouns ending with a liquid, are very numerous, and commonly Masculine:

|              |        |            |         |
|--------------|--------|------------|---------|
| Le chevalier | Knight | Le clocher | Steeple |
| Le soleil    | Sun    | L' hiver   | Winter  |
| Le poisson   | Fish   | Le menton  | Chin.   |

There are many to be excepted, and these are the most necessary to know:

|            |          |            |         |
|------------|----------|------------|---------|
| La faim    | Hunger   | La chair   | Flesh   |
| La main    | Hand     | La cuiller | Spoon   |
| La Cour    | Court    | La moisson | Harvest |
| La mer     | Sea      | La tour    | Tower   |
| La maison  | House    | La fin     | End     |
| La leçon   | Lesson   | La saison  | Season  |
| La boisson | Drinking | La prison  | Prison; |

As

As likewise Nouns ending in *eur*, which are all Feminine:

|            |        |              |          |
|------------|--------|--------------|----------|
| La liqueur | Liquor | La splendeur | Splendor |
| La couleur | Colour | La chaleur   | Heat.    |

We must except only these four;

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| Le bonheur | Happiness  |
| Le malheur | Misfortune |
| Le cœur    | Heart      |
| L' honneur | Honour;    |

And those which, being applicable only to men, are Masculine of their nature:

|               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| Le successeur | Succeffor  |
| Le precepteur | Preceptor  |
| L' Orateur    | Orator     |
| Le possesseur | Poffeffor. |

Nouns ending with a Consonant mute, or silent, are generally Masculine:

|           |       |             |         |
|-----------|-------|-------------|---------|
| L' argent | Money | Le pont     | Bridge  |
| Le vent   | Wind  | Le printems | Spring. |

We must except many Nouns, among which these are the most frequently used:

|         |        |         |        |
|---------|--------|---------|--------|
| La soif | Thirst | La toux | Cough  |
| La dent | Tooth  | La nuit | Night  |
| La paix | Peace  | La mort | Death; |



But Nouns ending in any of the following terminations, are all Feminine:

|                    |               |              |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------|
| In <i>ance</i> ,   | La bienséance | Becomingness |
|                    | La balance    | Scales       |
| In <i>ée</i> ,     | L' armée      | Army         |
|                    | La fumée      | Smoke        |
| In <i>ence</i> ,   | La decence    | Decency      |
|                    | La patience   | Patience     |
| In <i>ion</i> ,    | La nation     | Nation       |
|                    | L' occasion   | Occasion     |
| In <i>ude</i> ,    | La multitude  | Multitude    |
|                    | L' inquietude | Inquietude   |
| In <i>ure</i> ,    | La nature     | Nature       |
|                    | La figure     | Figure       |
| And in <i>té</i> , | La capacité   | Capacity     |
|                    | La sobriété   | Sobriety.    |

The only Noun, *silence*, both French and English, is to be excepted from those ending in *ence*; and these four from those ending in *té*, with an accent over the *é*:

|         |        |           |          |
|---------|--------|-----------|----------|
| Le coté | Side   | Le traité | Treatise |
| L'été   | Summer | Le paté   | Pye:     |

Besides, in all languages, several Nouns Substantive have no Plural; as

L' enfance | Infancy || La vicillesse | Old age.  
Particularly

Particularly those of virtues, vices, metals, and such like:

|          |  |       |  |            |  |         |
|----------|--|-------|--|------------|--|---------|
| La pitié |  | Piety |  | L' orgueil |  | Pride   |
| L' or    |  | Gold  |  | L' argent  |  | Silver. |

And some of them have only the Plural in use:

Les mœurs | Manners || Les ciseaux | Scissars.

It is here to be observed, that many Substantives, such as

Coufin | Foreigner || Neighbour | Scholar,

are used in English for both Genders, without any discrimination; whereas in French, they are distinguished in one Gender from another, by adding generally the Vowel *e* to the Noun Masculine, for rendering it of the Feminine Gender.

*Masculine.*

Coufin  
étranger  
Voisin  
écolier

Coufin  
Foreigner  
Neighbour  
Scholar

*Feminine*

Cousine  
étrangère  
Voisine  
écolière:

But

But we must except the Nouns Substantive ending in *eur*, because we then change *eur* into *euse* for the Feminine:

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| Danseur   | Male dancer   |
| Chanteur  | Male singer   |
| Danseuse  | Female dancer |
| Chanteuse | Female singer |

### *Of the* NOUN ADJECTIVE.

The Adjective in English is indeclinable, and therefore does not suffer any variation, either in Gender or in Number:

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| The good Prince  | The good Princess    |
| The good Princes | The good Princesses. |

But the French Adjective has very often four variations, because it ought to agree with the Noun Substantive, in Gender and Number:

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Le bon Prince    | La bonne Princesse     |
| Les bons Princes | Les bonnes Princesses. |

The Adjectives ending in *é*, marked  
over

over with an acute accent, are only used for the Masculine Gender:

Le frere ainé || The eldest brother;

And requires the addition of a mute *e* for the Feminine:

La foeur ainée || The eldest sister.

They take commonly the letter *s* in the Plural number:

|                   |  |                     |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|
| Les freres ainés  |  | The eldest brothers |
| Les foeurs ainées |  | The eldest sisters. |

Generally speaking, all the Adjectives which end in French in *i*, such as *poli*; or with a Consonant, such as *savant*, require likewise the addition of a silent *e* for their Feminine Gender:

|                                    |  |                                       |
|------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| Un François poli et<br>savant      |  | A polite and learned<br>French man    |
| Une Françoisse polie<br>et savante |  | A polite and learned<br>French woman. |

They take commonly an *s* in the Plural;

|                                         |  |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|
| Deux François polis<br>et savants       |  | Two polite and learn-<br>ed French men    |
| Deux Françaises po-<br>lies et savantes |  | Two polite and learn-<br>ed French women. |



However, the Adjectives ending in *e* mute, such as *aimable*, are used for both Genders, without any alteration; and those ending in *eux*, for the Masculine Gender, such as *genereux*, change their termination into *euse* for the Feminine:

|                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Un Anglois aimable<br>et genereux     | An amiable and generous Englishman    |
| Une Angloise aimable<br>et genereuse, | An amiable and generous English woman |

They take likewise an *s* in the Plural, except only the Masculine in *eux*, wherein the *x* seems to stand instead of the *s*:

|                                       |                                         |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Deux Anglois aimables et genereux     | Two amiable and generous English men    |
| Deux Angloises aimables et genereuses | Two amiable and generous English-women. |

---

*Of the* COMPARATIVE.

When we compare in French Nouns Substantive, the Particle *plus* (more), is commonly put before the Adjective preceded

ceded by the Substantive, and always attended by the Particle Comparative *que*, that answers to the English Particle *than*; which is called Comparison of Superiority:

|                                                      |  |                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------|
| La France est plus<br>peuplée que l' An-<br>gleterre |  | France is more popu-<br>lous than England. |
|------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------|

The Particle Comparative *moins* (less) is used when we decrease the signification of Adjectives; and it is likewise placed before them followed by the Particle *que*, (than); which we call Comparison of Inferiority:

|                                                  |  |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------|
| L' Angleterre est moins<br>peuplée que la France |  | England is less popu-<br>lous than France. |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------|

But when in any Comparison whatever there is no Adjective, we then make use of the Adverbs Comparative *mieux* (better), instead of the Particle *plus* and *pis*, or *plus mal* (worse), instead of the Particle *moins*; and the Adverb is to be  
put

put immediately after the Verb followed by the Comparative Particle *que*:

|                                                 |                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Elle danse mieux que moi                        | She dances better than I              |
| Il chante pis, or plus mal, qu'elle             | He sings worse than she               |
| Vous êtes mieux logés que nous                  | You are lodged better than we         |
| Nous avons été pis, or plus mal, traités qu'eux | We have been treated worse than they. |

It is here to be observed, that as the Particle Comparative *moins*, and the Adverb *pis*, or *plus mal*, are seldom used in French, as the correspondent comparative words *less* and *worse* in English, they are often supplied by these words,

Ne --- pas si --- que || not so --- as;

And then the Verb is put between the two Negative words *ne* and *pas*; and the Adjective between the Particles *si* and *que*. But if no Adjective is used in the comparison, the Particle *moins*, and the Adverb

verb *pis*, or *plus mal*, are supplied by these words;

Ne --- pas si bien que || not -- so well as.

Therefore the above comparisons of inferiority are more properly expressed in both languages thus;

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| L' Angleterre n' est     | England is not so po- |
| pas si peuplée que       | pulous as France      |
| la France                |                       |
| Il ne chante pas si bien | He does not sing so   |
| qu'elle                  | well as she           |
| Nous n' avons pas        | We have not been      |
| été si bien traitées     | treated so well as    |
| qu'eux                   | they.                 |

The comparison of equality is performed in French as in English, by putting the Particle Comparative *aussi* (as) before the Adjective, which is always attended by the Particle *que*, rendered in this sense into English by the Particle *as*;

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Votre soeur est aussi | Your sister is as young |
| jeune et riche que    | and rich as mine.       |
| la mienne             |                         |

Of



*Of the SUPERLATIVE.*

There are in French, as in any other Language, two sorts of Superlatives; the one absolute, the other relative.

The Superlative Absolute expresses qualities of Nouns Substantive in a very high or very low degree, without any reference to another person or thing; as

He is very fine      ||      She is very ugly.

The Superlative Relative expresses qualities of Substantives to the highest or lowest degree, with reference to any other persons or things; as

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| He is the finest among |  | She is the ugliest a- |
| his sons               |  | mong her daughters.   |

Superlatives Absolute are performed in French in the same manner as in English; that is, by the way of one of these three Particles Augmentative *très*, *fort*, or *bien*, (*very*, and sometimes *most*), which is to be put before the Adjective;

Je

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Je suis vôtre très-obé- | I am your most obe- |
| issant serviteur        | dient servant       |
| Il est bien pauvre      | He is very poor     |
| Elle est fort jolie     | She is very pretty. |

The Superlative Relative is formed in French by putting the Comparative Particle *plus*, which answers in this sense to the English Particle *most*, between the Definite Article and the Adjective:

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| C'est le gentilhomme    | He is the richest gen- |
| le plus riche de cette  | tleman in this town    |
| ville                   |                        |
| Elle est la plus studi- | She is the most stu-   |
| euse de toutes mes      | dious among all my     |
| écolières               | scholars.              |

Besides, there are in both languages three Adjectives which are not compared according to the foregoing rules, and therefore are irregular in the formation of their Comparatives and Superlatives. They are the following;

ADJEC-

## ADJECTIVES.

| <i>Positive.</i>  | <i>Comparative.</i>  | <i>Superlative.</i>       |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Bon<br>(good)     | Meilleur<br>(better) | Le meilleur<br>(the best) |
| Mauvais<br>(bad)  | Pire<br>(worse)      | Le pire<br>(the worst)    |
| Petit<br>(little) | Moindre<br>(lesser)  | Le moindre<br>(the least) |

To which we may add,

Superieur, *and* inferieur.

*Of the* NOUNS of NUMBER.

There are in French two sorts of Nouns of Number, viz. the Numeral and the Ordinal.

The Numeral Nouns are words established to tell over the persons, things, or actions, spoken of.

The Ordinal Nouns are those which are used to reckon persons or things, with a methodical order and rank.

The

The Numeral Nouns;

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| Un               | one               |
| Deux             | two               |
| Trois            | three             |
| Quatre           | four              |
| Cinq             | five              |
| Six              | six               |
| Sept             | seven             |
| Huit             | eight             |
| Neuf             | nine              |
| Dix              | ten               |
| Onze             | eleven            |
| Douze            | twelve            |
| Treize           | thirteen          |
| Quatorze         | fourteen          |
| Quinze           | fifteen           |
| Seize            | sixteen           |
| Dix-sept         | seventeen         |
| Dix-huit         | eighteen          |
| Dix-neuf         | nineteen          |
| Vingt            | twenty            |
| Vingt et un      | twenty-one        |
| Vingt-deux       | twenty-two        |
| Vingt-trois, &c. | twenty-three, &c. |
| Trente           | thirty            |
| Quarante         | forty             |
| Cinquante        | fifty             |

E

Soixante



|                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Soixante               | sixty                       |
| Soixante et dix        | seventy                     |
| Soixante et onze       | seventy-one                 |
| Soixante et douze, &c. | seventy-two, &c.            |
| Quatre-vingt           | eighty                      |
| Quatre-vingt-dix       | ninety                      |
| Cent                   | a hundred                   |
| Cent vingt et un       | a hundred and<br>twenty-one |
| Cent cinquante         | a hundred and fifty         |
| Deux cens              | two hundred                 |
| Trois cens, &c.        | three hundred, &c.          |
| Mille                  | a thousand                  |
| Onze cens              | eleven hundred              |
| Douze cens             | twelve hundred              |
| Treize cens, &c.       | thirteen hundred, &c.       |
| Deux mille             | two thousand                |
| Trois mille, &c.       | three thousand, &c.         |
| Dix mille, &c.         | ten thousand                |
| Cinquante mille        | fifty thousand              |
| Cent mille             | a hundred thousand          |
| Deux cens mille        | two hundred thou-<br>sand   |
| Cinq cens mille        | five hundred thou-<br>sand  |
| Un million             | a million.                  |

Numeral

Numeral Nouns are indeclinable, if we except *un*, *cent*, and *million*, which take the letter *s* in the Plural; as also *vingt*, but only when it comes after *quatre*, and before a Noun.

The numeral Noun *un* is used only for the Masculine, and is said *une* for the Feminine:

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| Un vieillard | an old man    |
| Une vieille  | an old woman. |

### The Ordinal Nouns:

|              |   |                |
|--------------|---|----------------|
| Le premier   | } | the first      |
| Le second    |   | the second     |
| Le deuxième  |   |                |
| Le troisième |   | the third      |
| Le quatrième |   | the fourth     |
| Le cinquième |   | the fifth      |
| Le sixième   |   | the sixth      |
| Le septième  |   | the seventh    |
| Le huitième  |   | the eighth     |
| Le neuvième  |   | the ninth      |
| Le dixième   |   | the tenth      |
| Le onzième   |   | the eleventh   |
| Le douzième  |   | the twelfth    |
| Le treizième |   | the thirteenth |

|                              |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Le quatorzième               | the fourteenth        |
| Le quinzième                 | the fifteenth         |
| Le seizième                  | the sixteenth         |
| Le dix-septième              | the seventeenth       |
| Le dix-huitième              | the eighteenth        |
| Le dix-neuvième              | the nineteenth        |
| Le vingtième                 | the twentieth         |
| Le vingt et unième           | the twenty-first      |
| Le vingt-deuxième            | the twenty-second     |
| Le vingt-troisième,<br>&c.   | the twenty-third, &c. |
| Le trentième                 | the thirtieth         |
| Le quarantième               | the fortieth          |
| Le cinquantième              | the fiftieth          |
| Le soixantième               | the sixtieth          |
| Le soixante et dixième       | the seventieth        |
| Le quatre vingtième          | the eightieth         |
| Le quatre vingt-dixi-<br>ème | the ninetieth         |
| Le centième                  | the hundredth         |
| Le cent unième, &c.          | the hundred and first |
| Le deux centième             | the two hundredth     |
| Le millième                  | the thousandth        |

Besides, there are some Nouns of Number called Collective; such as,

|                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| Une demi-douzaine | half a dozen |
| Une dizaine       | ten          |
|                   | Une          |

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| Une douzaine     | a dozen            |
| Une quinzaine    | fifteen            |
| Une vingtaine    | a score, or twenty |
| Une trentaine    | thirty             |
| Une quarantaine  | forty              |
| Une cinquantaine | fifty              |
| Une centaine     | a hundred          |
| Un millier       | a thousand.        |

Some Distributive; such as,

|               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| La moitié     | the half             |
| Le tiers      | the third part       |
| Le quart, &c. | the fourth part, &c. |

And some Proportional; such as,

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Le double   | double          |
| Le triple   | treble          |
| Le centuple | an hundredfold. |







### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the PRONOUN.*

**A** Pronoun is a word used instead of Nouns Substantive, to avoid their too frequent and disagreeable repetition.

There are in French seven sorts of Pronouns, which have, like the Nouns, the Gender and the Number, viz.

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| The Personal      | The Interrogative |
| The Conjunctive   | The Relative      |
| The Possessive    | AND               |
| The Demonstrative | The Improper.     |

---

#### *Of the PRONOUNS PERSONAL.*

A Personal Pronoun is commonly used before a Verb, where there is neither a Noun, being the Nominative Case of the Verb, nor an Interrogation; therefore no Verb is conjugated in French, through  
all

all its Tenses, without the assistance of Pronouns Personal, if we except the second person Singular, and the first and second Plural of the Imperative Mood, where no Pronoun is used.

The Personal Pronouns for the first person are, *je* (I) in the Singular, and *nous* (we) in the Plural:

Je parle | I speak      || Nous lisons | we read.

Those for the second person are, *tu* (thou) in the Singular, and *vous* (you or ye) in the Plural:

Tu vois | thou seest      || Vous faites | you do.

Those for the third person are, *il* (he or it) in the Singular; *ils* (they) in the Plural for the Masculine Gender; and *elle* (she or it) in the Singular; *elles* (they) in the Plural for the Feminine:

Il dit      | he says      || Elle aime | she loves  
Ils vont | they go      || Elles rient | they laugh.

They are declined by the Articles Indefinite *de*, *à*, *de*, or *par*, and varied thus:

DECLEN-

## DECLENSION of the PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

## The First Person.

*Singular.*

|                                        |                    |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Nominative.</i> Je, or moi          | I                  |
| <i>Genitive.</i> De moi                | of me              |
| <i>Dative.</i> A moi, or me            | to me, or me       |
| <i>Accusative.</i> Moi, or me          | me                 |
| <i>Ablative.</i> De moi; or<br>par moi | from me, or by me. |

*Plural.*

|                                      |                   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Nous                     | we                |
| <i>Gen.</i> De nous                  | of us             |
| <i>Dat.</i> A nous, or nous          | to us, or us      |
| <i>Accu.</i> Nous                    | us                |
| <i>Abla.</i> De nous, or par<br>nous | from us, or by us |

## The Second Person.

*Singular.*

|                                    |                        |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Tu, or toi             | thou                   |
| <i>Gen.</i> De toi                 | of thee                |
| <i>Dat.</i> A toi, or te           | to thee, or thee       |
| <i>Accu.</i> Toi, or te            | thee                   |
| <i>Abla.</i> De toi, or par<br>toi | from thee, or by thee. |

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

|                                      |                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Vous                     | you, or ye           |
| <i>Gen.</i> De vous                  | of you               |
| <i>Dat.</i> A vous, or vous          | to you, or you       |
| <i>Accu.</i> Vous                    | you, or ye           |
| <i>Abla.</i> De vous, or par<br>vous | from you, or by you. |

The Third Person Masculine.

*Singular.*

|                                    |                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Il, or lui             | he, or it            |
| <i>Gen.</i> De lui                 | of him               |
| <i>Dat.</i> A lui, or lui          | to him, or him       |
| <i>Accu.</i> Lui, or le            | him                  |
| <i>Abla.</i> De lui, or par<br>lui | from him, or by him. |

*Plural.*

|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Ils, or eux            | they                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> D' eux                 | of them                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> A eux, or leur         | to them, or them          |
| <i>Accu.</i> Eux, or les           | them                      |
| <i>Abla.</i> D' eux, or par<br>eux | from them, or by<br>them. |

The



## The Third Person Feminine.

*Singular.*

|                                      |                      |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Elle                     | she, or it           |
| <i>Gen.</i> D' elle                  | of her               |
| <i>Dat.</i> A elle, or lui           | to her, or her       |
| <i>Accu.</i> Elle, or la             | her                  |
| <i>Abla.</i> D' elle, or par<br>elle | from her, or by her. |

*Plural.*

|                                        |                           |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Elles                      | they                      |
| <i>Gen.</i> D' elles                   | of them                   |
| <i>Dat.</i> A elles, or leur           | to them, or them          |
| <i>Accu.</i> Elles, or les             | them                      |
| <i>Abla.</i> D' elles, or par<br>elles | from them, or by<br>them. |

There is another Pronoun Personal, that is, *soi*, which commonly signifies *one's self*, and is used in sentences; the subject whereof is a Noun or Pronoun, taken in an universal or indeterminate sense: therefore the French Particle *on*, which answers in this sense to the English indeterminate Pronoun Personal

Personal *one*, may be used as the Nominative of the Pronoun *soi*, which is varied thus;

|                                                   |                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> On                                    | one                                   |
| <i>Gen.</i> De <i>soi</i>                         | of one's self                         |
| <i>Dat.</i> A <i>soi</i> , or <i>se</i>           | to one's self                         |
| <i>Accu.</i> <i>Soi</i> , or <i>se</i>            | one's self                            |
| <i>Abla.</i> De <i>soi</i> , or <i>par</i><br>foi | from one's self, or by<br>one's self. |

The Pronoun Personal *it* is used in English only to represent an inanimate and irrational thing, and to distinguish it from a rational creature in the Third Person Singular; whereas in French the Pronoun of the third person of both genders *il* or *elle*, in the Singular Number, and *ils* or *elles* in the Plural, besides being applied to rational creatures, are also used with respect to things irrational and inanimate.

|                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| Il est tombé    | it is fallen  |
| Elle est cassée | it is broken, |



*Of the PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE.*

The Pronouns Conjunctive, so called because they are always joined to Verbs, are reckoned by some Grammarians among the Pronouns Personal only, because they denote persons as the Personals do. But they must be distinguished in two different kinds with respect to their very different office; for the Personal Pronouns denote the persons who do an action, and the Conjunctive, those who receive it;

I love you            |    You love me.

In the first example, *I* is a Pronoun Personal, and *you* Conjunctive; in the latter *you* is a Pronoun Personal, and *me* a Conjunctive; and in both, the Pronoun Personal stands for the agent, and the Conjunctive for the patient, or object.

The Pronouns Conjunctive for the first person are, *me* (me, or myself) in the Singular, and *nous* (us, or ourselves) in the Plural;

|                  |  |                  |
|------------------|--|------------------|
| Il me trompa     |  | he deceived me   |
| Elle nous flatte |  | she flatters us. |

Those for the second person are, *te* (thee, or thyself) in the Singular, and *vous* (you, ye, or yourself) in the Plural:

|                 |  |             |
|-----------------|--|-------------|
| Je te connois   |  | I know thee |
| Nous vous vimes |  | we saw you. |

Those for the third person are, *lui* (to him, to her, to it, *or* him, her, it, without the preposition *to* before them) in the Singular, and *leur* (to them, or them alone) in the Plural:

|                                 |  |                                    |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| Je lui parlai                   |  | I spoke to him                     |
| Il lui écrivit                  |  | he wrote to her                    |
| Elle leur enverra la<br>reponse |  | she will send an answer<br>to them |
| Il lui enseigne le<br>Français  |  | he teaches her the<br>French       |
| Elle lui montra la<br>lettre    |  | she showed him the<br>letter.      |

From the above examples it plainly appears that the Pronoun Conjunctive *lui*, being used in French for both genders, answers to the English Pronouns

*to*



*to him, to her, or to it*; and that whenever the English Pronouns *him, her, or them*, are used without the Preposition *to*, in the Dative case, expressive of persons to whom an action is directed, given, or addressed, they must be rendered into French by *lui* and *leur* only, and not otherwise.

There is another Pronoun Conjunctive, that is, *se*, which signifies *one's self*, when we speak in general without determining any particular person:

|                |                        |
|----------------|------------------------|
| Se deshabiller | to undress one's self  |
| Se flater      | to flatter one's self. |

As it is also used for both genders and numbers of particular persons or things, when the action expressed by a reflected Verb returns upon the subject that produces it, the Pronoun *se* answers likewise to the English Pronouns,

Himself | herself | itself | themselves.

The French Pronouns Conjunctive, *me, te, se, lui, nous, vous, leur*, ought to be used

used immediately before Verbs, and therefore always placed between the Noun or Pronoun and the Verb, as one may plainly see by the above instances.

However, when a Verb is used in the Second Person Singular, the first and second Plural of the Imperative Mood, all the Pronouns Conjunctive are to be put immediately after Verbs:

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Dites lui la raison      | tell him (or her) the reason     |
| Envoyons leur le tableau | Let us send the picture to them. |

When the Verb is in French in the second person, both Singular and Plural of the Imperative, we make use (perhaps for the better sound's sake) of the Pronouns Personal *moi* and *toi*, instead of the Conjunctive *me* and *te*, which are always either in the Dative or Accusative case:

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Habille-toi tout de suite | dress thyself directly |
| Donnez-moi l' argent      | give me the money.     |

Of

*Of the PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.*

Pronouns Possessive are in French, as in English, either Copulative or Relative. The former are Adjectives, because they are always joined to Nouns Substantive following them. The latter, on the contrary, are Substantives, because they are always used alone with reference to the Nouns Substantive that went before them in the discourse.

The Pronouns Possessive copulative are,

*Masculine.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                  | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Mon              | my               | mes            |
| Ton              | thy              | tes            |
| Son              | his, her, or its | ses            |
| Nôtre            | our              | nos            |
| Vôtre            | your             | vos            |
| Leur             | their            | leurs          |

*Feminine.*

*Feminine.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                  | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Ma               | my               | mes            |
| Ta               | thy              | tes            |
| Sa               | his, her, or its | ses            |
| Nôtre            | our              | nos            |
| Vôtre            | your             | vos            |
| Leur             | their            | leurs.         |

All these Pronouns, which never vary in English, are to be used in French according to the gender and number of the Nouns Substantive to which they are joined, and are declined by the articles Indefinite thus;

*Masculine.*

*Singular.*

|                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Mon mari      | my husband          |
| <i>Gen.</i> De mon mari   | of my husband       |
| <i>Dat.</i> A mon mari    | to my husband       |
| <i>Accu.</i> Mon mari     | my husband          |
| <i>Abla.</i> De mon mari, | from my husband, or |
| or par mon mari           | by my husband.      |

F

*Plural.*



*Plural.*

|                                                     |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Nos fils                                | our sons                                 |
| <i>Gen.</i> De nos fils                             | of our sons                              |
| <i>Dat.</i> A nos fils                              | to our sons                              |
| <i>Accu.</i> Nos fils                               | our sons                                 |
| <i>Abla.</i> De nos fils, <i>or</i><br>par nos fils | from our sons, <i>or</i> by<br>our sons. |

*Feminine.*

*Singular.*

|                                                     |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Sa femme                                | his wife                                 |
| <i>Gen.</i> De sa femme                             | of his wife                              |
| <i>Dat.</i> A sa femme                              | to his wife                              |
| <i>Accu.</i> Sa femme                               | his wife                                 |
| <i>Abla.</i> De sa femme,<br><i>or</i> par sa femme | from his wife, <i>or</i> by<br>his wife. |

*Plural.*

|                                                         |                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Vos filles                                  | your daughters                                       |
| <i>Gen.</i> De vos filles                               | of your daughters                                    |
| <i>Dat.</i> A vos filles                                | to your daughters                                    |
| <i>Accu.</i> Vos filles                                 | your daughters                                       |
| <i>Abla.</i> De vos filles, <i>or</i><br>par vos filles | from your daughters,<br><i>or</i> by your daughters. |

The Pronouns Possessive Relative are,

*Masculine.*

*Masculine.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                   | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Le mien          | mine              | les miens      |
| Le tien          | thine             | les tiens      |
| Le sien          | his, hers, or its | les siens      |
| Le nôtre         | ours              | les nôtres     |
| Le vôtre         | yours             | les vôtres     |
| Le leur          | theirs            | les leurs.     |

*Feminine.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                   | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| La mienne        | mine              | les miennes    |
| La tienne        | thine             | les tiennes    |
| La sienne        | his, hers, or its | les siennes    |
| La nôtre         | ours              | les nôtres     |
| La vôtre         | yours             | les vôtres     |
| La leur          | theirs            | les leurs.     |

These Pronouns, which are indeclinable in English, as the former, are also to agree in French in gender and number with the Nouns Substantive to which they relate.

Thus for instance, if we speak of a brother, we must say,

C'est le mien | he is mine.

Of a sister,

C'est la mienne | she is mine.

And if we speak of several brothers,

Ce sont les miens | they are mine:

And of several sisters,

Ce sont les miennes | they are mine.

Besides, they are always declined by the assistance of the articles Definite, *le*, *la*, and their Plural *les*, through all cases of both numbers, thus;

*Masculine.*

| <i>Singular.</i>      |                   | <i>Plural.</i>        |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Le mien   | mine              | les miens             |
| <i>Gen.</i> Du mien   | of mine           | des miens             |
| <i>Dat.</i> Au mien   | to mine           | aux miens             |
| <i>Accu.</i> Le mien  | mine              | les miens             |
| <i>Abla.</i> Du mien, | from mine,        | des miens, <i>or</i>  |
| <i>or par le mien</i> | <i>or by mine</i> | <i>par les miens.</i> |

*Feminine.*

| <i>Singular.</i>         |         | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--------------------------|---------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> La mienne    | mine    | les miennes    |
| <i>Gen.</i> De la mienne | of mine | des miennes    |
| <i>Dat.</i> A la mienne  | to mine | aux miennes    |
|                          |         | <i>Accu.</i>   |

|                           |                   |                        |
|---------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Accu.</i> La mienne    | mine              | les miennes            |
| <i>Abl.</i> De la mienne, | from mine,        | des miennes, <i>or</i> |
| <i>or par la mienne</i>   | <i>or by mine</i> | <i>par les miennes</i> |

It is highly important to observe here, that the gender of the Pronouns Possessive Copulative of the Third Person Singular, *his, her, or its*, follows in English that of the Nouns Substantive going before them, and denoting the possessor, master, or author of persons or things spoken of in the sentence; as for instance,

This boy does not love his mother.

That girl does not love her father.

Whereas in French, on the contrary, the gender of the Pronouns Possessive Copulative ought always to follow that of the Nouns Substantive which are next to them, and denote the persons or things possessed, depending, or produced: therefore the two above instances are to be rendered into French thus;

Ce garçon n' aime pas sa mere.

Cette fille n' aime pas son pere.



Nay, if a man sells me a mare, I say,  
Il me vendit sa jument | he sold me his mare;

Because *jument* is a Noun Feminine.

And if a woman sells me a horse, I say,  
Elle me vendit son | She sold me her horse;  
cheval

Because *cheval* is a Noun Masculine.

It is the same with the Pronouns Possessive Relative; and as they cannot agree with the next Noun, because such Pronouns are used alone in a substantively manner, as we have seen, they must follow the same gender with the Nouns Substantive to which they relate; as for instance,

George aime bien sa  
femme, mais Jean  
n' aime point la  
sienne

George loves his wife  
dearly, but John  
does not love his at  
all.

Sophie reçoit souvent  
des nouvelles de son  
mari, mais Anne  
n'en reçoit jamais  
du sien.

Sophia often receives  
news from her hus-  
band, but Ann ne-  
ver receives any  
from hers.

Moreover,

Moreover, the Possessive Pronouns of the Third Person Singular, both Copulative, *son, sa*, and their Plural *ses*, and Relative *le sien, la sienne*, and their Plural *les siens, les siennes*, are used in French as well for inanimate or irrational things as for persons; whereas the Pronoun Possessive *its*, both Copulative and Relative, is used in English only with respect to inanimate things and irrational creatures:

Bath est une ville jolie  
et agréable, et ses  
habitans sons polis

Bath is a pretty and  
pleasant city, and  
its inhabitants are  
polite.

---

*Of the* PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

Properly speaking, there are in French only two Pronouns Demonstrative, viz.

*Ce*, (this or that) which is an Adjective; because it is always joined to and goes before a Noun Substantive; and

*Celui*

*Celui* (he or that) which is a Substantive, because it is always used alone, and in a substantively manner.

As both agree in gender and number with the Nouns to which they are joined or relate, each of them has a Feminine, and both genders have a Plural number.

Therefore the Pronouns Demonstrative,

*Ce*, (this or that) and *celui*, (he or that)

Are said in the Feminine

*Cette*, (this or that) and *celle*, (she or that)

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| Ce Gentilhomme   | this Gentleman  |
| Cette Dame       | this Lady       |
| Celui qui pleure | he who cries    |
| Celle qui rie    | she who laughs. |

The Pronouns Demonstrative *ce*, and its Feminine *cette*, make *ces* (these or those) in the Plural; and *celui*, and its Feminine *celle*, are said in the Plural *ceux* and *celles*, both meaning *they* or *those*:

|                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| Ces Gentilshommes | these Gentlemen  |
| Ces Dames         | these Ladies     |
| Ceux qui pleurent | those who cry    |
| Celles qui rient  | those who laugh. |

All these Pronouns are used in French both for persons and things, without any distinction, though the Pronouns *he* or *she*, and their Plural *they*, (which are read in the Accusative Case *him* or *her* in the Singular, and *them* in the Plural) are used in English only with respect to persons:

|                                          |  |                                     |
|------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Je deteste celui qui<br>ment             |  | I detest him who lies               |
| J'aime celle qui parle<br>avec sincérité |  | I like her who speaks<br>sincerely. |

To distinguish the persons or things that are nearer, from those that are farther, we often join to the above Pronouns the Particles *ci* or *la*, coming immediately after them, and signifying *here* or *there*, and then a hyphen is put between the Pronoun and the Particle thus;

| <i>Masculine.</i>  |        | <i>Feminine.</i> |        |
|--------------------|--------|------------------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Ce-ci | } this | Cette-ci         | } this |
| Celui-ci           |        | Celle-ci         |        |
| Ce-la              | } that | Cette-la         | } that |
| Celui-la           |        | Celle-la         |        |
|                    |        | <i>Plu.</i>      |        |



|             | <i>Masculine.</i> |         | <i>Feminine.</i> |
|-------------|-------------------|---------|------------------|
| <i>Plu.</i> | Ces-ci            | } these | Ces-ci           |
|             | Ceux-ci           |         | Celles-ci        |
|             | Ces-la            | } those | Ces-la           |
|             | Ceux-la           |         | Celles-la        |

Therefore the Pronouns Demonstrative *ce-ci*, or *celui-ci*, their Feminine and their Plural, are to be used when the person or thing spoken of is near us; and the Pronouns *ce-la*, or *celui-la*, their Feminine and their Plural, denote persons or things at some distance; as speaking of two boys, the one being farther than the other:

J'aime mieux celui-ci | I like that better than  
la que celui-ci | this.

And speaking of two girls, the one nearer than the other:

Je n'aime pas celle-ci | I do not like this so  
autant que celle-la | well as that.

They are all declined by the assistance of the articles Indefinite *de*, *à*, *de*, or *par*, like the Pronouns both Personal and Possessive Copulative.

Among the Pronouns Demonstrative, in French, may be reckoned these three,

*Ceci, or cela | ce qui | ce que.*

They have neither Gender nor Plural, and are never used with reference to a particular Noun; but they are only relative to what has been said before, or is to be mentioned after, in the discourse.

*Ceci*, (which is not much in use) and *cela*, answer to the English Pronouns *it*, *this*, or *that*, when employed alone in a substantively manner, and without reference to a particular person or thing:

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Cela est vrai                   | It is true                        |
| Après cela il ne revint<br>plus | After this he never<br>came again |
| Je fais très-bien cela          | I know that very well.            |

We make use of the Pronoun *ce qui* only in a sentence of two parts or members, and it is always in the Nominative Case as the subject of its verb.

When *ce qui* is used in French in the beginning of the first member, it answers to the English Pronoun *that which*, or to  
the

the Pronoun *what*, taken in the same sense as *that which*:

|                                                            |  |                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ce qui contribue principalement à la santé est la sobriété |  | That which, or what, chiefly contributes to health, is sobriety. |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------------------------------|

And when it is employed in the beginning of the second member, as the subject of the second verb, it means *which* alone, used as a Substantive, and not as a Pronoun either interrogative or relative:

|                                                                       |  |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Les Anglois dejeuner avec du thé, ce qui n'est pas en usage en France |  | English people breakfast on tea, which is not used in France, |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------------------------|

For if the Pronoun *which* be used in English in the Accusative Case as the object of the Verb, it is rendered into French by *ce que*:

|                                                               |  |                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------|
| On m'a dit qu'elle est riche et noble, ce que je ne crois pas |  | I am told she is rich and noble, which I do not believe. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------|

The Pronoun *ce que*, used in French in the middle of a single sentence, answers

answers to the English Pronoun *what*, relating to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after:

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| Je n'ai pas compris ce   | I have not understood |
| que vous avez dit        | what you have said    |
| Je vous dirai ce soir ce | I will tell you this  |
| que vous pouvez          | evening what you      |
| faire                    | can do.               |

---

*Of the* PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

The Pronouns which are used in the French Interrogations are only four, viz.

|     |      |  |         |        |
|-----|------|--|---------|--------|
| Qui | who  |  | Quel    | what   |
| Que | what |  | Le quel | which. |

The two former are indeclinable, but the two latter vary according to the gender and number of the Nouns Substantive to which they are joined or relate.

The Pronoun *qui* (who) is used only with reference to persons of both genders and numbers, and declined through all the cases thus:

*Nom.*



|                                    |                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Qui                    | who                       |
| <i>Gen.</i> De qui                 | of whom, or whose         |
| <i>Dat.</i> A qui                  | to whom                   |
| <i>Accu.</i> Qui                   | whom                      |
| <i>Abla.</i> De qui, or par<br>qui | from whom, or by<br>whom. |
| Qui est là?                        | who is there?             |
| A qui est cet enfant?              | whose child is that?      |
| Qui avez vous vu?                  | whom have you seen?       |

The Pronoun *que* (what), used only in the accusative, and expressed by *quoi* in the other cases, has no gender nor plural, and therefore relates to something done or spoken of before, or else to be done or mentioned after in the discourse:

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Que souhaitez-vous? | what do you want?         |
| A quoi pensez-vous? | what are you thinking of? |

And it is declined thus:

|                     |         |                    |         |
|---------------------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Quoi    | what    | <i>Dat.</i> A quoi | to what |
| <i>Gen.</i> De quoi | of what | <i>Accu.</i> Que   | what.   |

The Pronouns Interrogative *quel* (what) and *le quel* (which), that make *quels* and  
les

*les quels* in the Plural, are used for the Masculine Gender, and *quelle* or *la quelle*, which make *quelles* or *les quelles* in the Plural for the Feminine both of persons or things.

The Pronoun *quel*, its Feminine, and their Plural, are Adjectives, because they are always joined to a Noun Substantive, with which they must agree in gender and number; and they are declined by the articles Indefinite, like in English:

|                                 |  |                                  |
|---------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| Quel livre lisez-vous?          |  | what book are you<br>reading?    |
| Quelles affaires avez-<br>vous? |  | what business have<br>you to do? |

The Pronoun *le quel*, its Feminine and their Plural, are Substantives, because they are always used alone with reference to persons or things before-mentioned; as for instance, after having spoken of two young Gentlemen, I conclude;

|                                |  |                               |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Le quel est le plus<br>savant? |  | which is the most<br>learned? |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|

And

And after having spoken of two young Ladies, I put this question:

|                                    |  |                             |
|------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| La quelle est la plus spirituelle? |  | which is the most sensible? |
|------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|

### *Of the PRONOUNS RELATIVE.*

The Pronouns Relative, which always refer to Nouns Substantive going before, and agree with the antecedent in gender and number, are in French,

| <i>Masculine.</i>     |  | <i>Feminine.</i> |            |
|-----------------------|--|------------------|------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Le quel  |  | La quelle        | who, which |
| <i>Plu.</i> Les quels |  | Les quelles      | or that:   |

But they are seldom used; and instead of them, we commonly make use of the Pronouns Relative *qui* in the Nominative Case, and *que* in the Accusative; therefore the former is used in speaking of all sorts of subjects, and the latter of all sorts of objects, and both answer to the English Pronouns *who*, *which*, or *that*.

They

They never vary, and are consequently referable both to persons and things, and common to both genders and numbers:

|                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Le Prince qui est mort                | the Prince who is dead              |
| La Princesse qui étoit<br>bien malade | the Princess who was<br>very ill    |
| Le Gentilhomme que<br>vous avez vu    | the Gentleman whom<br>you have seen |
| La femme que j'aime                   | the woman whom I<br>love            |
| Le carrosse que vous<br>avez acheté   | the coach which you<br>bought       |
| La lettre qui est deca-<br>chetée     | the letter which is un-<br>sealed.  |

The Pronoun *qui* is used in French not only in the Nominative but also through the other cases, except the Accusative, in which we make use of the Pronoun *que*. But it is declined in two different ways, according to the different relation, either to persons or to things.

When the Pronoun *qui* is used with reference to persons, it is declined thus:

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Nom. Qui             | who               |
| Gen. De qui, or dont | whose, or of whom |
| G                    | Dat.              |



|                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Dat.</i> A qui             | to whom                |
| <i>Accu.</i> Que              | whom                   |
| <i>Ab.</i> De qui, or par qui | from whom, or by whom: |

And if *qui* relates only to inanimate objects, we must say in the Genitive *de quoi*, or *dont* (of which), instead of *de qui*, and in the Dative *à quoi* (to which), instead of *à qui*, the Ablative being never in use.

The Pronouns Relative, which are more frequently used in French, are *le* (him or it) for the Masculine Gender, and *la* (her or it) for the Feminine; they make *les* (them) in the Plural of both genders.

We may here observe, that the Particles *le*, *la*, *les*, are Articles when they go immediately before Nouns, and are Pronouns when they are joined to Verbs; and that the English make use of the Pronoun *it* to distinguish inanimate things from persons, whereas the French Pronouns Relative *le*, *la*, *les*, refer to inanimate objects as well as to persons:

Le

|                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| Le connoissez-vous?  | do you know him?       |
| La verrons nous?     | shall we see her?      |
| Je les ai rencontrés | I met with them        |
| Il la cassa exprés   | he broke it on purpose |
| Elle le vendit       | she sold it.           |

Among the Pronouns Relative we have in French, these three Particles

*Dont* | *en* | *y*,  
Which never vary, and always relate to some person, thing, or place, whereof mention has been made in the discourse.

The Particle Relative *dont*, having the form of the Genitive Case, and being more properly used instead of the Pronouns Relative *du quel*, or *de la quelle*, and their Plural *des quels*, or *des quelles*, as also instead of the Pronoun *de qui*, answers to the English Pronouns

|                                                          |                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Whose   of whom   of which   whereof:                    |                                                        |
| C'est un homme, dont<br>les enfans sont très-<br>heureux | this is a man whose<br>children are very<br>happy      |
| C'est la maison, dont<br>je vous ai parlé                | this is the house which<br>I have spoken of to<br>you. |

And when the Particle Relative *dont* having the form of the Ablative Case, is more properly used instead of the Pronouns *par le quel* or *par la quelle*, and their Plural *par les quels*, or *par les quelles*, as likewise instead of the Pronouns *de qui* or *par qui*, it is rendered into English by *from whom*, or *from which*:

|                                                                |                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C'est une Dame dont<br>j'ai reçu plusieurs<br>lettres          | This is a Lady from<br>whom I received<br>several letters                              |
| Il n'osa retourner dans<br>le pays dont il avoit<br>été chassé | He did not dare to go<br>again into the coun-<br>try from which he<br>had been driven. |

There is no Particle in French so frequently used as the Particle *en*, which having the form of the Genitive Case, and being relative to Persons as well as to things, and common to both genders and numbers, answers to the several English Pronouns,

Of him | of her | of it | of them;

Elle

|                        |  |                            |
|------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| Elle n'en parle jamais |  | she never speaks of<br>him |
| Il en est amoureux     |  | he is fond of her          |
| Nous en avons quatre   |  | we have four of them       |
| J'en suis charmé       |  | I am glad of it:           |

And sometimes to the Relative Particles;

|                      |  |                         |  |          |
|----------------------|--|-------------------------|--|----------|
| For it               |  | from it                 |  | by it    |
| At it                |  | from them               |  | by them; |
| Il en est bien fâché |  | he is very sorry for it |  |          |
| Elle s'en rejouit    |  | she rejoices at it.     |  |          |

The Particle *y*, which has always the form of the Dative Case, is only relative to a place, and answers to the English Adverbs Relative *there* or *thither*:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Je ne veux pas y aller |  | I will not go thither |
| Elle y soupa           |  | she supped there;     |

And sometimes to the English expressions;

|                        |  |                               |  |       |  |          |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------------|--|-------|--|----------|
| To it                  |  | to them                       |  | in it |  | in them; |
| Il n'y consentit point |  | he would not consent<br>to it |  |       |  |          |
| Mettez y du sucre      |  | put some sugar in it.         |  |       |  |          |

I cannot avoid observing here, that the Pronouns Relative *le* (him), *la* (her),



their Plural *les* (them), and the Particles Relative *en* and *y*, are frequently joined with the Pronouns Conjunctive;

Me | te | se | lui | nous | vous | leur;

Which commonly precede the Pronouns and Particles Relative thus:

|        |                   |
|--------|-------------------|
| Me le  | him or it to me   |
| Me la  | her or it to me   |
| Me les | them to me        |
| Te le  | him or it to thee |
| Te la  | her or it to thee |
| Te les | them to thee      |

|       |       |                                                  |
|-------|-------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Se le | it to | { one's self<br>himself<br>herself<br>themselves |
| Se la |       |                                                  |

|        |         |                                                  |
|--------|---------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Se les | them to | { one's self<br>himself<br>herself<br>themselves |
|--------|---------|--------------------------------------------------|

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| Nous le  | him or it to us  |
| Nous la  | her or it to us  |
| Nous les | them to us       |
| Vous le  | him or it to you |
| Vous la  | her or it to you |

Vous

|          |                               |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| Vous les | them to you                   |
| M'en     | of it to me                   |
| T'en     | of it to thee                 |
| S'en     | one's self of it              |
| Lui en   | of it to him <i>or</i> to her |
| Nous en  | of it to us                   |
| Vous en  | of it to you                  |
| Leur en  | of it to them                 |
| M'y      | me there                      |
| T'y      | thee there                    |
| S'y      | one's self there              |
| Lui y    | to him <i>or</i> to her there |
| Nous y   | us there                      |
| Vous y   | you there                     |
| Leur y   | to them there                 |

The Relative Pronouns *le, la, les*, are also often joined to the Pronouns Con-junctive *lui* and *leur*, but the former go always before the latter thus:

|          |                                          |
|----------|------------------------------------------|
| Le lui   | him <i>or</i> it to him <i>or</i> to her |
| La lui   | her <i>or</i> it to him <i>or</i> to her |
| Les lui  | them to him <i>or</i> to her             |
| Le leur  | him <i>or</i> it to them                 |
| La leur  | her <i>or</i> it to them                 |
| Les leur | them to them;                            |

Besides

Besides the Pronouns Relative *le, la, les*, are sometimes joined to, and go before the Particles *en* and *y* thus:

|        |              |       |             |
|--------|--------------|-------|-------------|
| L'en   | him from it  | L'y   | him there   |
| L'en   | her from it  | L'y   | her there   |
| Les en | them from it | Les y | them there: |

And at other times both Particles Relative *en* and *y* meet together in the same sentence, but the latter takes the first place thus:

Y en | of him, of her, of it, *or* of them there.

Moreover, the Pronouns Relative *le, la, les*, and Particles Relative *en* and *y*, follow the rule hinted on the Pronouns Conjunctive; that is, they are to be placed immediately before Verbs, not only when they are used alone, as for instance;

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Je le vois souvent  | I often see him        |
| Il la flatoit       | he flattered her       |
| Vous en fites trois | you made three of them |
| Elle y demeuroit    | she lived there:       |

But

But also when they are joined with the Pronouns Conjunctive; as for instance,

|                        |                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Il me le rendit        | he returned it to me                   |
| Elle la lui presta     | she lent it to him <i>or</i> to<br>her |
| Nous vous les vendimes | we sold them to you                    |
| S'il m'en parle        | if he speak of it to me                |
| Il lui en montra deux  | he shewed him two of<br>them           |
| Je vous les y enverrai | I will send them to<br>you there       |
| Nous y en laiffames    | we left five of them                   |
| cinq                   | there                                  |
| Elle m'y trouvera      | she will find me there                 |
| Ils la leur donneront  | they will give it to<br>them.          |

However, when a Verb is used affirmatively in the Second Person Singular, the first or second Plural of the Imperative Mood, all the above Pronouns and Particles Relative, either used alone or joined together, must be put immediately after Verbs:

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| Appellez-la   | call her         |
| Faites-en six | make six of them |

Vas-



|                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| Vas-y tout de suite | go there directly             |
| Envoyez-nous les    | send them to us               |
| Parlez-lui en       | speak to him of it            |
| Rendons-les lui     | let us return them to<br>her. |

But when the Verb is in French in the second person, both Singular and Plural of the Imperative Mood, and any Pronoun or Particle Relative comes together with the Pronoun Conjunctive of the first or second person Singular, there is a deviation from the above rules; for we then make use of the Pronouns Personal *moi* and *toi*, instead of the Conjunctives *me* and *te*, and the Pronoun or Particle Relative in this case goes before the Pronoun Personal.

Thus, instead of saying,

|              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| Donnez-me le | menez-m'y; |
|--------------|------------|

I must say, for the sake of harmony,

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| Donnez-le moi | give it to me  |
| Menez-y moi   | lead me there. |



*Of the PRONOUNS IMPROPER.*

Among the Pronouns Improper or Indefinite, so called because they determine neither persons nor things spoken of, there are in French some which being indeclinable, have neither gender nor number:

|                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Quiconque                    | whoever, <i>or</i> any body     |
| Quelconque                   | whatever                        |
| Quiquece soit                | whosoever                       |
| Quequece soit                | whatsoever                      |
| Plusieurs                    | several                         |
| Beaucoup de                  | many, <i>or</i> much            |
| Personne                     | no-body, <i>or</i> no man       |
| Personne ne                  |                                 |
| Chaque                       | every, <i>or</i> each           |
| Rien ne, <i>or</i> ne rien   | nothing                         |
| D'autrui, <i>or</i> à autrui | of others, <i>or</i> to others. |

A few of them vary only in gender, without Plural:

Chacun } every body, *or* every one.  
Chacune }

Aucun } any  
Aucune }

Nul } no  
Nulle }

Aucun

|           |        |         |           |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----------|
| Aucun ne  | } none | Pas un  | } not one |
| Aucune ne |        | Pas une |           |

A very few, being common to both genders, vary only in number:

|          |            |       |         |
|----------|------------|-------|---------|
| Quelque  | } some, or | Autre | } other |
| Quelques |            | any   |         |

Meme | memes || fame.

And some of them have four variations, because they are to agree in gender and number with the Nouns Substantive to which they refer, or are joined:

| <i>Masculine.</i>     | <i>Feminine.</i>    |                             |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| S. Quelqu'un          | Quelqu'une          | } some body,<br>or any body |
| P. Quelquesuns        | Quelquesunes        |                             |
| S. Certain            | Certaine            | } certain                   |
| P. Certains           | Certaines           |                             |
| S. Tout               | Toute               | } all, every, or            |
| P. Tous               | Toutes              |                             |
| S. Tel                | Telle               | } such, or such             |
| P. Tels               | Telles              |                             |
| S. L'un l'autre       | L'une l'autre       | } each other, or            |
| P. Les uns les autres | Les unes les autres |                             |
|                       |                     | } one another               |

S. L'un

|                                |                              |                                       |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. L'un et<br>l'autre          | L'une et l'autre             | } the one and<br>the other, <i>or</i> |
| P. Les uns et<br>les autres    | Les unes et les<br>autres    |                                       |
| S. Ni l'un ni<br>l'autre       | Ni l'une ni<br>l'autre       | } neither, <i>or</i><br>neither the   |
| P. Ni les uns ni<br>les autres | Ni les unes ni<br>les autres |                                       |

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Un tel homme      | fuch a man        |
| Une telle femme   | fuch a woman      |
| Des tels hommes   | fuch men          |
| Des telles femmes | fuch women        |
| Tout le pays      | all the country   |
| Toute la ville    | all the town      |
| Tous les pays     | all the countries |
| Toutes les villes | all the towns.    |







## CHAP. IV.

### *Of the VERB.*

**T**HERE are in French, as in any other modern Language, three sorts of Verbs, viz. Active, Passive, and Neuter.

An Active Verb denotes an action done by a subject (called otherwise the agent), in the Nominative Case upon an object (called otherwise the patient), in the Accusative,

George aime Anne | George loves Ann.

A Passive Verb expresses an action received by the object, in the Nominative Case from the subject, in the Ablative,

Anne est aimée de, or | Ann is loved by  
par George | George.

A Neuter Verb denotes either an action remaining in the subject that produces it:

George

George aime | George loves.

Or the state and being of the subject in  
some position or situation:

George est amoureux | George is in love.

*Of the* AUXILIARY VERBS.

No Verb in French can be conjugated  
through all its Moods and Tenses with-  
out the help of one of the Auxiliary  
Verbs:

Avoir | to have    || Etre | to be.

The former is used as an assistance  
to the Conjugation of the Compound  
Tenses of all Active Verbs, and some  
Neuter, by adding to it the Participle  
Active of the Verb which is to be con-  
jugated:

|                       |  |                     |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| George a bien étudié  |  | George studied his  |
| sa leçon              |  | lesson well         |
| Anne n'a point étudié |  | Ann has not studied |
|                       |  | at all.             |

The

The latter assists the Conjugation of all Tenses of the Passive Verbs, and of the Compound Tenses of some Neuter Verbs, by adding to it the Participle of the Verb Active or Neuter:

|                                                       |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| George et Anne sont<br>aimés de tous leurs<br>maîtres | George and Ann are<br>loved by their mas-<br>ters. |
| George est parti, et<br>Anne est revenue              | George is gone, and<br>Ann is come back.           |

Both ought to be learned by heart with the utmost exactness before one goes on in the Conjugation of any other Verb; otherwise students must have a great deal of trouble in learning the French Verbs both regular and irregular.

---

## THE CONJUGATION

OF THE AUXILIARY VERB,

Avoir | to have

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

*Singular.*

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| J'ai         | I have         |
| Tu as        | thou hast      |
| Il or elle a | he or she has. |

*Plural.*

|                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| Nous avons       | we have        |
| Vous avez        | you or ye have |
| Ils or elles ont | they have.     |

Preter-Imperfect.

*Singular.*

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| J'avois  | I had      |
| Tu avois | thou hadst |
| Il avoit | he had.    |

*Plural.*

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| Nous avions | we had        |
| Vous aviez  | you or ye had |
| Ils avoient | they had.     |

H

Perfect



Perfect Definite.

*Singular.*

|        |            |
|--------|------------|
| J'eus  | I had      |
| Tu eus | thou hadst |
| Il eut | he had     |

*Plural.*

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| Nous eumes | we had        |
| Vous eutes | you or ye had |
| Ils eurent | they had.     |

Perfect Indefinite.

*Singular.*

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| J'ai eu  | I have had    |
| Tu as eu | thou hast had |
| Il a eu  | he has had.   |

*Plural.*

|               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Nous avons eu | we have had        |
| Vous avez eu  | you or ye have had |
| Ils ont eu    | they have had.     |

First Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| J'avois eu  | I had had      |
| Tu avois eu | thou hadst had |
| Il avoit eu | he had had.    |

*Plural.*

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Nous avions eu | we had had        |
| Vous aviez eu  | you or ye had had |
| Ils avoient eu | they had had.     |

Second Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| J'eus eu  | I had had      |
| Tu eus eu | thou hadst had |
| Il eut eu | he had had.    |

*Plural.*

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Nous eumes eu | we had had        |
| Vous eutes eu | you or ye had had |
| Ils eurent eu | they had had.     |

Future Tense.

*Singular.*

|          |                         |
|----------|-------------------------|
| J'aurai  | I shall or will have    |
| Tu auras | thou shalt or wilt have |
| Il aura  | he shall or will have   |

*Plural.*

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Nous aurons | we shall or will have           |
| Vous aurez  | you or ye shall or will<br>have |
| Ils auront  | they shall or will have.        |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

[It has never the first Person.]

|           |  |               |
|-----------|--|---------------|
| Aïe       |  | have thou     |
| Qu'il aït |  | let him have. |

*Plural.*

|              |  |                       |
|--------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ayons        |  | let us have           |
| Ayez         |  | have you <i>or</i> ye |
| Qu'ils aïent |  | let them have         |

CONJUNCTIVE *or* SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

*Singular.*

|             |  |                      |
|-------------|--|----------------------|
| Que j'aïe   |  | that I may have      |
| Que tu aïes |  | that thou mayst have |
| Qu'il aït   |  | that he may have.    |

*Plural.*

|                |  |                           |
|----------------|--|---------------------------|
| Que nous ayons |  | that we may have          |
| Que vous ayez  |  | that you <i>or</i> ye may |
|                |  | have                      |
| Qu'ils aïent   |  | that they may have.       |

Preter-

Preter-Imperfect.

*Singular.*

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| Que j'eusse   | that I might have   |
| Que tu eusses | that thou mightest  |
|               | have                |
| Qu'il eût     | that he might have. |

*Plural.*

|                   |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Que nous eussions | that we might have          |
| Que vous eussiez  | that you <i>or</i> ye might |
|                   | have                        |
| Qu'ils eussent    | that they might have:       |

Or with the conditional Conjunction *si* instead of *que*.

*Singular.*

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| Si j'avois  | if I had      |
| Si tu avois | if thou hadst |
| S'il avoit  | if he had.    |

*Plural.*

|                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| Si nous avions | if we had               |
| Si vous aviez  | if you <i>or</i> ye had |
| S'ils avoient  | if they had.            |



# Conditional Tense.

## Singular.

|           |                                                         |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| J'aurois  | I should, would, could,<br>or might have                |
| Tu aurois | thou shouldst, wouldst,<br>couldst, or mightest<br>have |
| Il auroit | he should, would,<br>could, or might<br>have.           |

## Plural.

|              |                                                     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Nous aurions | we should, would,<br>could, or might<br>have        |
| Vous auriez  | you or ye should,<br>would, could, or<br>might have |
| Ils auroient | they should, would,<br>could, or might<br>have.     |

## Perfect Definite.

### Singular.

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| Que j'aie eu | that I may have had |
|              | Que                 |

|                |                             |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Que tu aies eu | that thou mayst have<br>had |
| Qu'il ait eu   | that he may have had.       |

*Plural.*

|                   |                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Que nous ayons eu | that we may have had                  |
| Que vous ayez eu  | that you <i>or</i> ye may<br>have had |
| Qu'ils aient eu   | that they may have<br>had.            |

First Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| Que j'eusse eu   | that I might have had         |
| Que tu eusses eu | that thou mightst have<br>had |
| Qu'il eût eu     | that he might have<br>had.    |

*Plural.*

|                      |                                         |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Que nous eussions eu | that we might have<br>had               |
| Que vous eussiez eu  | that you <i>or</i> ye might<br>have had |
| Qu'ils eussent eu    | that they might have<br>had:            |

Or with the conditional conjunction *si*  
instead of *que*. *Singular.*

*Singular.*

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Si j'avois eu  | if I had had      |
| Si tu avois eu | if thou hadst had |
| S'il avoit eu  | if he had had.    |

*Plural.*

|                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| Si nous avions eu | if we had had        |
| Si vous aviez eu  | if you or ye had had |
| S'ils avoient eu  | if they had had.     |

Second Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|              |                                         |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------|
| J'aurois eu  | I should, would, &c.<br>have had        |
| Tu aurois eu | thou shouldst, wouldst,<br>&c. have had |
| Il auroit eu | he should, would, &c.<br>have had.      |

*Plural.*

|                 |                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Nous aurions eu | we should, would, &c.<br>have had           |
| Vous auriez eu  | you or ye should,<br>would, &c. have<br>had |
| Ils auroient eu | they should, would,<br>&c. have had.        |

Second

Second Future.

*Singular.*

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| J'aurai eu  | I shall have had    |
| Tu auras eu | thou shalt have had |
| Il aura eu  | he shall have had.  |

*Plural.*

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| Nous aurons eu | we shall have had        |
| Vous aurez eu  | you or ye shall have had |
| Ils aurent eu  | they shall have had.     |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |          |              |
|-----------------|----------|--------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Avoir    | to have      |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Avoir eu | to have had. |

*Gerund.*

|                    |          |            |
|--------------------|----------|------------|
| <i>Present.</i>    | Ayant    | having     |
| <i>Perfect.</i>    | Ayant eu | having had |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Eu       | had.       |





The CONJUGATION of the *Auxiliary Verb*  
ETRE——*To be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

*Singular.*

|                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| Je suis        | I am          |
| Tu es          | thou art      |
| Il or elle est | he or she is. |

*Plural.*

|                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| Nous sommes       | we are        |
| Vous êtes         | you or ye are |
| Ils or elles sont | they are.     |

Preter-Imperfect

*Singular.*

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| J'étois  | I was     |
| Tu étois | thou wast |
| Il étoit | he was    |

*Plural.*

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| Nous étions | we were        |
| Vous étiez  | you or ye were |
| Ils étoient | they were      |

Perfect

Perfect Definite.

*Singular.*

|        |           |
|--------|-----------|
| Je fus | I was     |
| Tu fus | thou wast |
| Il fut | he was.   |

*Plural.*

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Nous fumes | we were        |
| Vous fûtes | you or ye were |
| Ils furent | they were.     |

Perfect Indefinite.

*Singular.*

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| J'ai été  | I have been    |
| Tu as été | thou hast been |
| Il a été  | he has been.   |

*Plural.*

|                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| Nous avons été | we have been        |
| Vous avez été  | you or ye have been |
| Ils ont été    | they have been.     |

First Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| J'avois été  | I had been      |
| Tu avois été | thou hadst been |
| Il avoit été | he had been.    |

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

|                 |                           |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Nous avions été | we had been               |
| Vous aviez été  | you <i>or</i> ye had been |
| Ils avoient été | they had been.            |

Second Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| J'eus été  | I had been      |
| Tu eus été | thou hadst been |
| Il eut été | he had been.    |

*Plural.*

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| Nous eumes été | we had been                |
| Vous eutes été | you <i>or</i> ye had been. |
| Ils eurent été | they had been.             |

Future Tense.

*Singular.*

|          |                              |
|----------|------------------------------|
| Je serai | I shall <i>or</i> will be    |
| Tu seras | thou shalt <i>or</i> wilt be |
| Il sera  | he shall <i>or</i> will be.  |

*Plural.*

|             |                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Nous serons | we shall <i>or</i> will be                  |
| Vous serez  | you <i>or</i> ye shall <i>or</i> will<br>be |
| Ils seront  | they shall <i>or</i> will be.               |

IMPERA-

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| Sois       |  | be thou     |
| Qu'il soit |  | let him be. |

*Plural.*

|               |  |                     |
|---------------|--|---------------------|
| Soyons        |  | let us be           |
| Soyez         |  | be you <i>or</i> ye |
| Qu'ils soient |  | let them be.        |

CONJUNCTIVE *or* SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

*Singular.*

|             |  |                    |
|-------------|--|--------------------|
| Que je sois |  | that I may be      |
| Que tu sois |  | that thou mayst be |
| Qu'il soit  |  | that he may be.    |

*Plural.*

|                 |  |                              |
|-----------------|--|------------------------------|
| Que nous soyons |  | that we may be               |
| Que vous soyez  |  | that you <i>or</i> ye may be |
| Qu'ils soient   |  | that they may be.            |

Preter-Imperfect.

*Singular.*

|               |  |                       |
|---------------|--|-----------------------|
| Que je fusse  |  | that I might be       |
| Que tu fusses |  | that thou mightest be |
| Qu'il fût     |  | that he might be.     |

*Plural.*



*Plural.*

|                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Que nous fussions | that we might be                  |
| Que vous fussiez  | that you <i>or</i> ye might<br>be |
| Qu'ils fussent    | that they might be:               |

Or with the conditional conjunction *si*  
instead of *que*.

*Singular.*

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| Si j'étois  | If I was     |
| Si tu étois | if thou wast |
| S'il étoit  | if he was.   |

*Plural.*

|                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| Si nous étions | If we were    |
| Si vous étiez  | if you were   |
| S'ils étoient  | if they were. |

## Conditional Tense.

*Singular.*

|           |                                                        |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Je ferois | I should, would, could,<br><i>or</i> might be          |
| Tu ferois | thou shouldst, wouldst,<br>couldst, <i>or</i> might be |
| Il feroit | he should, would,<br>could, <i>or</i> might be.        |

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

|              |                                                                 |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Nous serions | we should, would,<br>could, <i>or</i> might be                  |
| Vous seriez  | you <i>or</i> ye should,<br>would, could, <i>or</i><br>might be |
| Ils seroient | they should, would,<br>could, <i>or</i> might be.               |

Perfect Definite.

*Singular.*

|                 |                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Que j'aie été   | that I may have been         |
| Que tu aies été | that thou mayst have<br>been |
| Qu'il ait été   | that he may have been.       |

*Plural.*

|                    |                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Que nous ayons été | that we may have been                  |
| Que vous ayez été  | that you <i>or</i> ye may<br>have been |
| Qu'ils aient été   | that they may have<br>been.            |

First Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Que j'eusse été   | that I might have been          |
| Que tu eusses été | that thou mightest<br>have been |
| Qu'il eût été     | that he might have<br>been.     |

*Plural.*

|                       |                                          |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Que nous eussions été | that we might have<br>been               |
| Que vous eussiez été  | that you <i>or</i> ye might<br>have been |
| Qu'ils eussent été    | that they might have<br>been:            |

Or with the conditional conjunction *si*  
instead of *que*.

*Singular.*

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Si j'avois été  | if I had been      |
| Si tu avois été | if thou hadst been |
| S'il avoit été  | if he had been.    |

*Plural.*

|                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Si nous avions été | if we had been               |
| Si vous aviez été  | if you <i>or</i> ye had been |
| S'ils avoient été  | if they had been.            |

## Second Preterpluperfect.

*Singular.*

|               |                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| J'aurois été  | I should, would, &c.<br>have been        |
| Tu aurois été | thou shouldst, wouldst,<br>&c. have been |
| Il auroit été | he should, would, &c.<br>have been.      |

*Plural.*

|                  |                                              |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Nous aurions été | we should, would, &c.<br>have been           |
| Vous auriez été  | you or ye should,<br>would, &c. have<br>been |
| Ils auroient été | they should, would,<br>&c. have been.        |

Second Future.

*Singular.*

|              |                      |
|--------------|----------------------|
| J'aurai été  | I shall have been    |
| Tu auras été | thou shalt have been |
| Il aura été  | he shall have been.  |

*Plural.*

|                 |                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Nous aurons été | we shall have been           |
| Vous aurez été  | you or ye shall have<br>been |
| Ils auront été  | they shall have been.        |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |           |               |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Etre      | to be         |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Avoir été | to have been. |

*Gerund.*

|                    |           |             |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|
| <i>Present.</i>    | Etant     | being       |
| <i>Perfect.</i>    | Ayant été | having been |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Été       | been.       |



*Of the Regular VERBS.*

There are in French four different Conjugations of Verbs, distinguished by four different endings of the Infinitive Mood.

The Infinitive of the first Conjugation is ended in *er*; as,

Aimer | to love || Parler | to speak.

That of the second Conjugation in *ir*; as,

Punir | to punish || Benir | to bless.

That of the third in *oir*; as,  
Recevoir | to receive || Devoir | to owe.

And that of the fourth in *re*; as,  
Repondre | to answer || Defendre | to defend.

A French Verb has fifteen Tenses, without comprehending in that number either the Infinitive or the Gerund, (called in English Participle Present) which never vary in their endings.

And

And here it is proper to observe, that though the Tenses laid down in the Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs *avoir* and *être*, (which may serve as two examples of the Conjugation of all Verbs with regard to the denomination, use, and order of Tenses) appear more than fifteen in number, because the Preter-Imperfect of the Conjunctive Mood, as well as its compound, called otherwise the First Preterpluperfect, have been conjugated in two different ways; however, as they do not change their denomination, notwithstanding the alternative use of them, we account those four tenses as only two, called the Preter-Imperfect, and the First Preterpluperfect of the Conjunctive Mood, expressed by *que j'eusse* (that I might have), and *que j'eusse eu* (that I might have had), when the Verb implies a desire or wish; or by *si j'avois* (if I had), and *si j'avois eu* (if I had had), when the action denoted by

the Verb is uncertain, and depends upon a condition.

The fifteen Tenses of a French Verb are divided into seven compound, four general, and four simple.

The Compound Tenses, so called because they are compounded with the single tenses of the Auxiliary Verb *avoir*, and the Participle of the Verb which is to be conjugated, are the following:

|                             |   |                         |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| The Perfect Indefinite      | } | of the Indicative Mood. |
| The First Preterpluperfect  |   |                         |
| The Second Preterpluperfect |   |                         |

|                             |   |                           |
|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| The Perfect Definite        | } | of the Con-junctive Mood. |
| The First Preterpluperfect  |   |                           |
| The Second Preterpluperfect |   |                           |
| The Second Future           |   |                           |

The general Tenses, so called because the terminations of their persons are the same in all French Verbs, are the following:

|                           |   |                         |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| The Preter-Imperfect, and | } | of the Indicative Mood. |
| The Future Tense          |   |                         |

The

The Preter-Imperfect, and } of the Conjun-  
The Conditional Tense } tive Mood.

The Simple Tenses, so called because they are conjugated simply without the assistance either of any of the single Tenses of the Auxiliary Verb *avoir*, or of the Participle, and without any generality, are the following:

The Present Tense, and } of the Indicative  
The Perfect Definite } Mood,  
The Imperative, and  
The Present of the Conjunctive,

in which Tenses the termination of persons is different according to the four different Conjugations of Verbs, depending upon the four different endings of the Infinitive.

It is impossible to mistake in the formation of the seven Compound Tenses, if a learner be well acquainted with the Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb *avoir*; for in the Compound Tenses of all French Verbs we only repeat the single



Tenses of that Auxiliary, to which is to be added the Participle Active of any regular or irregular Verb; as for instance, from the Verb *parler*, (to speak)

|                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| J'ai parlé                       | I have spoken          |
| J'avois parlé }<br>J'eus parlé } | I had spoken           |
| Que j'aïe parlé                  | that I may have spoken |
| Si j'avois parlé                 | if I might have spoken |
| J'aurois parlé                   | I should have spoken   |
| J'aurai parlé                    | I shall have spoken.   |

As for the four general Tenses, whose persons have the same terminations as those of the correspondent Tenses in the verb *avoir*, they are formed, as in that verb, from the Infinitive Mood; that is, by striking out the endings *er* in the first Conjugation, *ir* in the second, *oir* in the third, and *re* in the fourth, and by putting in their place the syllables marked distinctly for each person in the following tables, accompanied with four different Verbs in the Infinitive, which we give as four examples of the Conjugation of the four different terminations.

But we must observe here, that there is a deviation from this rule in the forming of the Preter-Imperfect of the Con-junctive Mood in Verbs ending in *oir*, in which we leave out the syllables *cevoir* from the Infinitive *recevoir*, before adding to it the letters laid down in that table.

Preter-Imperfect of the Indicative.

|          |        |        |        |         |        |          |
|----------|--------|--------|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| Aimer    | ois    | ois    | oit    | ions    | iez    | oient    |
| Punir    | issois | issois | issoit | issions | issiez | issoient |
| Recevoir | ois    | ois    | oit    | ions    | iez    | oient    |
| Repondre | ois    | ois    | oit    | ions    | iez    | oient    |

Future Tense of the Indicative.

|          |      |      |     |       |      |       |
|----------|------|------|-----|-------|------|-------|
| Aimer    | erai | eras | era | erons | erez | eront |
| Punir    | irai | iras | ira | irons | irez | iront |
| Recevoir | rai  | ras  | ra  | rons  | rez  | ront  |
| Repondre | rai  | ras  | ra  | rons  | rez  | ront  |

Preter-

Preter-Imperfect of the Conjunctive.

|          |       |        |     |          |         |         |
|----------|-------|--------|-----|----------|---------|---------|
| Aimer    | asse  | asses  | ât  | affions  | affiez  | assent  |
| Punir    | isse  | isses  | ît  | iffions  | iffiez  | issent  |
| Recevoir | çusse | çusses | çût | çussions | çussiez | çussent |
| Repondre | isse  | isses  | ît  | iffions  | iffiez  | issent  |

Conditional Tense.

|          |       |       |       |        |       |         |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|---------|
| Aimer    | erois | erois | eroit | erions | eriez | eroient |
| Punir    | irois | irois | iroit | irions | iriez | iroient |
| Recevoir | rois  | rois  | roit  | rions  | riez  | roient  |
| Repondre | rois  | rois  | roit  | rions  | riez  | roient  |

Thus, after having perfectly conjugated the auxiliary verb *avoir*, the four simple tenses only remain now to be learned.

They are likewise formed from the Infinitive by taking off the endings *er* in verbs of the first conjugation, *ir* in those of the second, *re* in those of the fourth, and

and the syllables *cevoir* in those of the third, and by putting in their place the letters marked in the following tables; to which are joined the above Verbs as four examples of the Conjugation of the simple tenses of all regular verbs in the French language.

Present of the Indicative Mood.

|          |      |      |      |        |       |         |
|----------|------|------|------|--------|-------|---------|
| Aimer    | e    | es   | e    | ons    | ez    | ent     |
| Punir    | is   | is   | it   | issons | issez | issent  |
| Recevoir | çois | çois | çoit | cevons | cevez | çoivent |
| Repondre | s    | s    | —    | ons    | ez    | ent     |

Perfect Definite of the Indicative.

|          |     |     |     |       |       |        |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|--------|
| Aimer    | ai  | as  | a   | ames  | ates  | erent  |
| Punir    | is  | is  | it  | imes  | ites  | irent  |
| Recevoir | çus | çus | çut | çumes | çutes | çurent |
| Repondre | is  | is  | it  | imes  | ites  | irent  |



Imperative Mood.

|          |   |      |       |        |       |         |
|----------|---|------|-------|--------|-------|---------|
| Aimer    | — | es   | e     | ons    | ez    | ent     |
| Punir    | — | is   | isse  | issons | issez | issent  |
| Recevoir | — | çois | çoive | cevons | cevez | çoivent |
| Repondre | — | s    | e     | ons    | ez    | ent     |

Present of the Conjunctive Mood.

|          |       |        |       |         |        |         |
|----------|-------|--------|-------|---------|--------|---------|
| Aimer    | e     | es     | e     | ions    | iez    | ent     |
| Punir    | isse  | isses  | isse  | issions | issiez | issent  |
| Recevoir | çoive | çoives | çoive | cevions | ceviez | çoivent |
| Repondre | e     | es     | e     | ions    | iez    | ent     |

The Gerunds of French Verbs, which always will have before them the Preposition *en*, meaning in this sense *in*, are also formed from the Infinitive by changing the endings *er*, *oir*, *re*, into *ant*, and the ending *ir* into *issant*:

En

|              |  |            |
|--------------|--|------------|
| En aimant    |  | loving     |
| En punissant |  | punishing  |
| En recevant  |  | receiving  |
| En repondant |  | answering. |

The Participles of French Verbs end always in *é* marked over with an acute accent for the first Conjugation, in *i* for the second, and in *u* for the third and fourth:

|       |  |          |  |         |  |           |
|-------|--|----------|--|---------|--|-----------|
| Aimé, |  | loved    |  | Reçu    |  | received  |
| Puni  |  | punished |  | Repondu |  | answered. |

Before we proceed, it is here to be observed, that the use of Tenses, denoting past time, in the French verbs, is not the same with that of the English.

In the Conjugation of all verbs, both French and English, there are properly three Tenses; the one present, the other past, and the third future.

The use of the Present and Future Tenses is so common in both languages, that there is no difference at all between them.

But

But as for the past time or tense the difference is so considerable, that the past time is divided in the French into five branches; whereas it is distributed in the English into only three, as one may see by the foregoing conjugations of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir* and *être*, and the following instance.

The Tenses, in the English, denoting the past time are,

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| The Preterite        | <i>I loved</i>      |
| The Preterperfect    | <i>I have loved</i> |
| The Preterpluperfect | <i>I had loved.</i> |

The Tenses, in the French, denoting the past time are,

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| The Preter-Imperfect        | <i>j'aimois</i>     |
| The Perfect Definite        | <i>j'aimai</i>      |
| The Perfect Indefinite      | <i>j'ai aimé</i>    |
| The First Preterpluperfect  | <i>j'avois aimé</i> |
| The Second Preterpluperfect | <i>j'eus aimé.</i>  |

Thus the English Preterite Tense *I loved* answers to the French Preter-Imperfect *j'aimois*,

*j'aimois*, and the Perfect Definite *j'aimai*. And the English Preterpluperfect *I had loved* answers to the French First Preterpluperfect *j'avois aimé*, and the Second Preterpluperfect *j'eus aimé*.

This very important and difficult matter, particularly for those who are unacquainted with the Latin, is fully treated in the Syntax on the use and construction of the French Tenses.

Although what I have already hinted concerning the forming of the regular Verbs, might be sufficient to make the learner acquainted with the four different Conjugations of them; yet I think it proper to give here an example of each one in particular.

But it is unnecessary to lay down the Compound Tenses of the four examples at large, because they consist of the repetition of the single Tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir* joined with the Participles of Active or Neuter Verbs.

*An*



*An EXAMPLE of the FIRST CONJUGATION ending in ER.*

Aimer | To love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

( I love )

|                        |  |                             |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aime    |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aimons     |
| Tu aimes               |  | Vous aimez                  |
| Il <i>or</i> elle aime |  | Ils <i>or</i> elles aiment. |

Preter-Imperfect.

( I loved )

|                       |  |                          |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aimois |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aimions |
| Tu aimois             |  | Vous aimiez              |
| Il aimoit             |  | Ils aimoient.            |

Perfect Definite.

( I did love )

|                      |  |                          |
|----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aimai |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aimames |
| Tu aimas             |  | Vous aimates             |
| Il aimait            |  | Ils aimèrent.            |

Perfect Indefinite.

( I have loved )

|                            |  |                                    |
|----------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'ai aimé &c. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous avons aimé<br>&c. |
|----------------------------|--|------------------------------------|

First

First Preterpluperfect.

( I had loved )

S. J'avois aimé &c. | P. Nous avions aimé &c.

Second Preterpluperfect.

( I had loved )

S. J'eus aimé &c. | P. Nous eumes aimé &c.

Future Tense.

( I shall or will love )

|                                                     |  |                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Sing. J'aimerai<br/>Tu aimeras<br/>Il aimera</p> |  | <p>Plu. Nous aimerons<br/>Vous aimerez<br/>Ils aimeront.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

( Love thou )

|                                                           |  |                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Sing. ———<br/>aimes<br/>Qu'il }<br/>Qu'elle } aime</p> |  | <p>Plu. Aimons<br/>Aimez<br/>Qu'ils }<br/>Qu'elles } aiment</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------|

CONJUNCTIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

( That I may love )

|                                                         |  |                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Sing. Que j'aime<br/>Que tu aimes<br/>Qu'il aime</p> |  | <p>P. Que nous aimions<br/>Que vous aimiez<br/>Qu'ils aiment.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------|

Preter-

Preter-Imperfect.

(That I might love)

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que j'aimasse | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous aimas- |
|                            | fions                       |
| Que tu aimasses            | Que vous aimassiez          |
| Qu'il aimât                | Qu'ils aimassent.           |

Conditional Tense.

(I should, would, could, *or* might love)

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aimerois | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aimerions |
| Tu aimerois             | Vous aimeriez              |
| Il aimeroit             | Ils aimeroient.            |

Perfect Definite.

(That I may have loved)

|                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Que j'aie aimé &c. | <i>P.</i> Que nous ayons aimé &c. |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

First Preterpluperfect.

(If I might have loved)

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Si j'avois aimé &c. | <i>P.</i> Si nous avions aimé &c. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I should, would, &c. have loved)

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> J'aurais aimé &c. | <i>P.</i> Nous aurions aimé &c. |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|

Second

Second Future.

(I shall *or* will have loved)

|                 |  |                     |
|-----------------|--|---------------------|
| S. J'aurai aimé |  | P. Nous aurons aimé |
| Éc.             |  | Éc.                 |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|          |            |                |
|----------|------------|----------------|
| Present. | Aimer      | to love        |
| Perfect. | Avoir aimé | to have loved. |

Gerund.

|             |            |              |
|-------------|------------|--------------|
| Present.    | En aimant  | loving       |
| Perfect.    | Ayant aimé | having loved |
| Participle. | Aimé       | loved.       |

An EXAMPLE of the SECOND CONJUGATION ending in IR.

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| Punir | To punish. |
|-------|------------|

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

|                         |  |                                |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| Sing. Je punis          |  | Plu. Nous punissons            |
| Tu punis                |  | Vous punissez                  |
| Il <i>or</i> elle punit |  | Ils <i>or</i> elles punissent. |

K

Preter-



Preter-Imperfect.

(I punished)

|                           |  |                             |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je punissois |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous punissions |
| Tu punissois              |  | Vous punissiez              |
| Il punissoit              |  | Ils punissoient.            |

Perfect Definite.

(I did punish)

|                       |  |                          |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je punis |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous punimes |
| Tu punis              |  | Vous punites             |
| Il punit              |  | Ils punirent.            |

Perfect Indefinite.

(I have punished)

|                        |  |                             |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'ai puni |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous avons puni |
| <i>Éc.</i>             |  | <i>Éc.</i>                  |

First Preterpluperfect.

(I had punished)

|                           |  |                            |
|---------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'avois puni |  | <i>P.</i> Nous avions puni |
| <i>Éc.</i>                |  | <i>Éc.</i>                 |

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I had punished)

|                         |  |                           |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'eus puni |  | <i>P.</i> Nous eumes puni |
| <i>Éc.</i>              |  | <i>Éc.</i>                |

Future

Future Tense.

(I shall or will punish)

|                         |  |                           |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je punirai |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous punirons |
| Tu puniras              |  | Vous punirez              |
| Il punira               |  | Ils puniront,             |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Punish thou)

|                  |  |                       |
|------------------|--|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ——— |  | <i>Plu.</i> Punissons |
| Punis            |  | Punissez              |
| Qu'il } punisse  |  | Qu'ils } punissent    |
| Qu'elle }        |  | Qu'elles }            |

CONJUNCTIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

(That I may punish)

|                             |  |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que je punisse |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous punif-<br>fions |
| Que tu punisses             |  | Que vous punissiez                   |
| Qu'il punisse               |  | Qu'ils punissent.                    |

Preter-Imperfect.

(That I might punish)

|                             |  |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que je punisse |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous punif-<br>fions |
| Que tu punisses             |  | Que vous punissiez                   |
| Qu'il punît                 |  | Qu'ils punissent.                    |

Conditional Tense.

(I should, would, could, *or* might punish)

|                          |  |                            |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je punirois |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous punirions |
| Tu punirois              |  | Vous puniriez              |
| Il puniroit              |  | Ils puniroient.            |

Perfect Definite.

(That I may have punished)

|                             |  |                                 |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que j'aie puni |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous ayons puni |
| Éc.                         |  | Éc.                             |

First Preterpluperfect.

(If I might have punished)

|                              |  |                                 |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Si j'avois puni |  | <i>Plu.</i> Si nous avions puni |
| Éc.                          |  | Éc.                             |

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I should, would, Éc. have punished)

|                         |  |                             |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> J'aurois puni |  | <i>P.</i> Nous aurions puni |
| Éc.                     |  | Éc.                         |

Second Future.

(I shall *or* will have punished)

|                           |  |                            |
|---------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aurai puni |  | <i>P.</i> Nous aurons puni |
| Éc.                       |  | Éc.                        |

INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |            |                   |
|-----------------|------------|-------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Punir      | to punish         |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Avoir puni | to have punished. |

*Gerund.*

|                    |              |                 |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| <i>Present.</i>    | En punissant | punishing       |
| <i>Perfect.</i>    | Ayant puni   | having punished |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Puni         | punished.       |

*An EXAMPLE of the THIRD CONJUGATION ending in OIR.*

Recevoir | To receive.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

(I receive)

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je reçois | <i>Plu.</i> Nous recevons |
| Tu reçois              | Vous recevez              |
| Il or elle reçoit      | Ils or elles reçoivent.   |

Preter-Imperfect.

(I received)

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je recevois | <i>Plu.</i> Nous recevions |
| Tu recevois              | Vous receviez              |
| Il recevoit              | Ils recevoient.            |

K 3

Perfect



Perfect Definite.

(I did receive)

|                        |  |                          |
|------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je reçus. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous reçûmes |
| Tu reçus               |  | Vous reçûtes             |
| Il reçut               |  | Ils reçurent.            |

Perfect Indefinite.

(I have received)

|                        |  |                             |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'ai reçu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous avons reçu |
| <i>Éc.</i>             |  | <i>Éc.</i>                  |

First Preterpluperfect.

(I had received)

|                           |  |                              |
|---------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'avois reçu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous avions reçu |
| <i>Éc.</i>                |  | <i>Éc.</i>                   |

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I had received)

|                         |  |                             |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'eus reçu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous eûmes reçu |
| <i>Éc.</i>              |  | <i>Éc.</i>                  |

Future Tense.

(I shall *or* will receive)

|                          |  |                            |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je recevrai |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous recevrons |
| Tu recevras              |  | Vous recevrez              |
| Il recevra               |  | Ils recevront.             |

IMPERA-

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Receive thou)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ——— | <i>Plu.</i> Recevons |
| Reçois           | Recevez              |
| Qu'il } reçoive  | Qu'ils } reçoivent.  |
| Qu'elle }        | Qu'elles }           |

CONJUNCTIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

(That I may receive)

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que je reçoive | <i>P.</i> Que nous recevions |
| Que tu reçoives             | Que vous receviez            |
| Qu'il reçoive               | Qu'ils reçoivent.            |

Preter-Imperfect.

(That I might receive)

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que je reçusse | <i>P.</i> Que nous reçussions |
| Que tu reçusses             | Que vous reçussiez            |
| Qu'il reçût                 | Qu'ils reçussent.             |

Conditional Tense.

(I should, would, could, or might receive)

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je recevrais | <i>Plu.</i> Nous recevriions |
| Tu recevrais              | Vous recevriez               |
| Il recevrait              | Ils recevraient.             |

Perfect

Perfect Definite.

(That I may have received)

|                                    |  |                                        |
|------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que j'aie reçu<br>Éc. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous ayons<br>reçu Éc. |
|------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|

First Preterpluperfect.

(If I might have received)

|                                  |  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Si j'avois reçu<br>Éc. |  | <i>P.</i> Si nous avions reçu<br>Éc. |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I should, would, Éc. have received)

|                                   |  |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aurais reçu<br>Éc. |  | <i>P.</i> Nous aurions reçu<br>Éc. |
|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|

Second Future.

|                                  |  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aurai reçu<br>Éc. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aurons reçu<br>Éc. |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |            |                   |
|-----------------|------------|-------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Recevoir   | to receive        |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Avoir reçu | to have received. |

*Gerund.*

|                    |             |                 |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>Present.</i>    | En recevant | receiving       |
| <i>Perfect.</i>    | Ayant reçu  | having received |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Reçu        | received.       |

*An*

*An EXAMPLE of the FOURTH CONJUGATION ending in RE.*

Repondre | To answer.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

(I answer)

|                          |  |                                |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je reponds  |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous repondons     |
| Tu reponds               |  | Vous repondez                  |
| Il <i>or</i> elle repond |  | Ils <i>or</i> elles repondent. |

Preter-Imperfect.

(I answered)

|                           |  |                             |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je repondois |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous repondions |
| Tu repondois              |  | Vous repondiez              |
| Il repondoit              |  | Ils repondoient.            |

Perfect Definite.

(I did answer)

|                          |  |                           |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je repondis |  | <i>P.</i> Nous repondimes |
| Tu repondis              |  | Vous repondites           |
| Il repondit              |  | Ils repondirent.          |

Perfect Indefinite.

(I have answered)

|                           |  |                            |
|---------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'ai repondu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous avons re- |
| <i>Ec.</i>                |  | pondu <i>Ec.</i>           |

First



First Preterpluperfect.

(I had answered)

|                              |  |                                 |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'avois répondu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous avions répondu |
| <i>Éc.</i>                   |  | <i>Éc.</i>                      |

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I had answered)

|                            |  |                                |
|----------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'eus répondu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous eumes répondu |
| <i>Éc.</i>                 |  | <i>Éc.</i>                     |

Future Tense.

(I shall or will answer)

|                           |  |                             |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je répondrai |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous répondrons |
| Tu répondras              |  | Vous répondrez              |
| Il répondra               |  | Ils répondront.             |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Answer thou)

|                  |  |                       |
|------------------|--|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ——— |  | <i>Plu.</i> Répondons |
| Réponds          |  | Répondez              |
| Qu'il } réponde  |  | Qu'ils } répondent    |
| Qu'elle }        |  | Qu'elles }            |

CONJUNC-

CONJUNCTIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

(That I may answer)

|                             |  |                             |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que je reponde |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous repon- |
|                             |  | dions                       |
| Que tu repondes             |  | Que vous repondiez          |
| Qu'il reponde               |  | Qu'ils repondent.           |

Preter-Imperfect.

(That I might answer)

|                             |  |                             |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Que je repondisse |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous repon- |
|                             |  | dissions                    |
| Que tu repondisses          |  | Que vous repondissiez       |
| Qu'il repondît              |  | Qu'ils repondissent.        |

Conditional Tense.

(I should, would, could, or might answer)

|                            |  |                            |
|----------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je repondrois |  | <i>P.</i> Nous repondrions |
| Tu repondrois              |  | Vous repondriez            |
| Il repondroit              |  | Ils repondroient.          |

Perfect Definite.

(That I may have answered)

|                             |  |                            |
|-----------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Que j'aie repondu |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous ayons |
| Éc.                         |  | repondu Éc.                |

First

First Preterpluperfect.

(If I might have answered)

|                                     |  |                                         |
|-------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Si j'avois répondu<br>Éc. |  | <i>P.</i> Si nous avions répondu<br>Éc. |
|-------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------|

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I should, would, Éc. have answered)

|                                      |  |                                         |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aurais répondu<br>Éc. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aurions répondu<br>Éc. |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------|

Second Future.

(I shall or will have answered)

|                                     |  |                                        |
|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'aurai répondu<br>Éc. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous aurons répondu<br>Éc. |
|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |               |                   |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Repondre      | to answer         |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Avoir répondu | to have answered. |

*Gerund.*

|                    |               |                 |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>Present.</i>    | En repondant  | answering       |
| <i>Perfect.</i>    | Ayant répondu | having answered |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Repondu       | answered.       |



*Of the* VERBS ACTIVE.

Active Verbs in French, as in any other language, must have before them either one or more Nouns, or one or more Pronouns in the Nominative Case, denoting either one or more persons, or one or more things that do an action, and are followed either by one or more Nouns, or by one or more Pronouns in the Accusative Case, denoting either one or more persons, or one or more things that receive the action denoted by a Verb:

|                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Votre frere aime ma  | your brother loves my   |
| foeur                | sister                  |
| Ils n'aiment ni leur | they love neither their |
| pere, ni leur mere   | father nor their mo-    |
|                      | ther                    |
| Cependant le pere et | however, both father    |
| la mere aiment ten-  | and mother love their   |
| drement leurs enfans | children dearly.        |

They are conjugated, through all their Moods and Tenses, after the same manner as the above four Verbs given as four examples



examples of the four different Conjugations of all French Verbs, according to their different termination in the Infinitive Mood.

---

*Of the* VERBS PASSIVE.

Passive Verbs must always have before them a Nominative, denoting one or more persons, or one or more things that receive an action, and are always followed by an Ablative Case expressing one or more persons, or one or more things, that do the action denoted by a Verb:

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Vôtre soeur est aimée       | your sister is loved by |
| de, <i>or</i> par mon frere | my brother              |
| Ces enfans sont aimés       | these children are lov- |
| de leur pere et de          | ed by their parents     |
| leur mere                   |                         |
| Cependant ils ne sont       | yet they are not loved  |
| pas aimés de leurs          | by their children.      |
| enfans                      |                         |

The Conjugation of Passive Verbs consists (both in French and in English) only

only in the joining of the Participle of any Verb to be conjugated in a passive voice with any Tense of the Auxiliary Verb *être*, necessarily used through all its Moods and Tenses.

And, as we have conjugated the Verb *être* as an Auxiliary, it was thought needless to give here an example of the Conjugation of French Passive Verbs.

We may only observe that the Participle of a Passive Verb, in French, varies according to the difference of gender and number of the Nominative Case with which the Participle must agree, as plainly appears by the above instances.

---

#### *Of the VERBS NEUTER.*

Neuter Verbs have only before them the Nominative Case, denoting the person or thing, that is, or makes an action which does not pass to any other person or thing, but remains in the subject that produces it.

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Je suis bien fatigué  | I am very tired     |
| Elle chante très bien | she sings very well |
| Il danse bien mal     | he dances very ill. |

They are conjugated in the same manner as the Active, according to their different ending in the Infinitive Mood.

But some of them require the assistance of the Auxiliary Verb *avoir*, and some others, that of the Auxiliary Verb *être*, in the forming of their compound Tenses:

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| Avoir marché | to have walked |
| Etre allé    | to be gone.    |

Besides the Active, Passive, and Neuter Verbs, there are in every language three other sorts of Verbs, viz. Reflected, Impersonal, and Irregular.

### *Of the REFLECTED VERBS.*

Reflected Verbs, in which the action returns upon the same subject that produces it, are always used in French with the Pronouns Conjunctive:

Me | te | se | nous | vous | se.

which

which in this sense are said in English,

Myself, thyself, himself, or herself,

Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

In the simple and general Tenses they are conjugated as the Active and Neuter Verbs, according to their termination in the Infinitive. But in the Compound Tenses they require the assistance of the Simple Tenses of the Auxiliary Verb *être* (to be), though they will have in English that of the Simple Tenses of the Auxiliary *to have* (avoir), as one may see by the following Conjugation, which we give as an example of all French Reflexed Verbs:

Se flater

| To flatter one's self.

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### Singular.

Je me flate

Tu te flates

Il

Elle } se flate

I flatter myself

thou flatterest thyself

he

she } flatters

{ himself

{ herself.

L

Plural.



*Plural.*

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Nous nous flatons | we flatter ourselves  |
| Vous vous flatiez | ye flatter yourselves |
| Ils } se flatent  | they flatter them-    |
| Elles }           | selves.               |

*Preter-Imperfect.*

(I flattered myself)

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je me flatois | <i>P.</i> Nous nous flations |
| Tu te flatois              | Vous vous flatiez            |
| Il se flatoit              | Ils se flatoient.            |

*Perfect Definite.*

(I did flatter myself)

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je me flatai | <i>P.</i> Nous nous flatames |
| Tu te flatas              | Vous vous flatates           |
| Il se flatà               | Ils se flatèrent.            |

*Perfect Indefinite.*

(I have flattered myself)

|                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Je me suis flaté | <i>P.</i> Nous nous sommes |
| Éc.                        | flatés Éc.                 |

*First Preterpluperfect.*

(I had flattered myself)

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je m'étois flaté | <i>P.</i> Nous nous étions |
| Éc.                           | flatés Éc.                 |

Second

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I had flattered myself)

|                                     |  |                                             |
|-------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je me fus flaté<br>Éc. |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous nous fu-<br>mes flatés Éc. |
|-------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|

Future Tense.

(I shall or will flatter myself)

|                             |  |                                    |
|-----------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je me flaterai |  | <i>P.</i> Nous nous flate-<br>rons |
| Tu te flateras              |  | Vous vous flaterez                 |
| Il se flatera               |  | Ils se flateront,                  |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(Flatter thyself)

|                   |  |                          |
|-------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ———  |  | <i>Plu.</i> Flatons-nous |
| Flates-toi        |  | Flatez-vous              |
| Qu'il } se flatte |  | Qu'ils } se flattent     |
| Qu'elle }         |  | Qu'elles }               |

CONJUNCTIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

(That I may flatter myself)

|                               |  |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que je me flatte |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous nous<br>flatons |
| Que tu te flatas              |  | Que vous vous flatiez                |
| Qu'il se flatte               |  | Qu'ils se flattent.                  |

Preter-Imperfect.

(That I might flatter myself)

|                              |  |                                       |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Que je me flatasse |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous nous flatassions |
| Que tu te flatasses          |  | Que vous vous flatassiez              |
| Qu'il se flatât              |  | Qu'ils se flatassent.                 |

Conditional Tense.

(I should, would, could, or might flatter myself)

|                              |  |                                |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Je me flaterois |  | <i>P.</i> Nous nous flaterions |
| Tu te flaterois              |  | Vous vous flateriez            |
| Il se flateroit              |  | Ils se flateroient.            |

Perfect Definite.

(That I may have flattered myself)

|                                       |  |                                           |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Que je me sois flaté<br>&c. |  | <i>P.</i> Que nous nous soyons flatés &c. |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|

First Preterpluperfect.

(If I might have flattered myself)

|                                      |  |                                          |
|--------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> Si je m'étois flaté<br>&c. |  | <i>P.</i> Si nous nous étions flatés &c. |
|--------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------|

Second

Second Preterpluperfect.

(I should, would, &c. have flattered myself)

|                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. Je me serois flaté<br>&c. | P. Nous nous serions<br>flatés &c. |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|

Second Future.

(I shall or will have flattered myself)

|                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| S. Je me serai flaté<br>&c. | P. Nous nous serons<br>flatés &c. |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Pres.   Se flater    | to flatter one's self         |
| Perf.   S'être flaté | to have flattered one's self. |

Gerund.

|                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Pres.   En se flatant | flattering one's self        |
| Perf.   S'étant flaté | having flattered one's self. |

Participle.

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Masculine.</i>       | <i>Feminine.</i>    |
| Sing. Flaté } flattered | Flatée } flattered. |
| Plu. Flatés }           | Flatées }           |

The Participle in these Verbs is of the same nature with the Passive, and therefore varies according to the dif-



ference of gender and number of the Nominative Case with which the Participle must agree.

And here we may observe, that there are in French a great many verbs used as Reflected, which are construed in English like the Neuter; and they are known by the Infinitive Mood, where the Pronoun Conjunctive *se*, denoting reflection, goes before them, though the Pronoun *one's self* be omitted in the English Infinitive:

|              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| Se lever     | to rise    |
| Se proposer  | to propose |
| Se repentir  | to repent  |
| Se reveiller | to awake.  |

---

#### *Of the IMPERSONAL VERBS.*

The Impersonal Verbs, which are commonly used in the third person of the singular number, through all their Moods and Tenses, are conjugated in French in the same manner as the Active and Neuter Verbs, according to the Conjugation they

they are of, and require the assistance of the verb *avoir* in their Compound Tenses.

Besides, there are in French two sorts of Impersonal Verbs. The first sort is of those Verbs which are absolutely and properly such. The second, of those which are Active or Neuter Verbs, impersonally used by the help of the Particle *on* going before them.

Among the Verbs absolutely and properly Impersonal, these are of the most extensive and frequent use:

|                    |            |                     |              |
|--------------------|------------|---------------------|--------------|
| Arriver            | to happen  | Il arrive           | it happens   |
| Falloir            | must       | Il faut             | it must      |
| Paroître           | to appear  | Il paroît           | it appears   |
| Sembler            | to seem    | Il semble           | it seems     |
| Pleuvoir           | to rain    | Il pleut            | it rains     |
| Neiger             | to snow    | Il neige            | it snows     |
| Grêler             | to hail    | Il grêle            | it hails     |
| Tonner             | to thunder | Il tonne            | it thunders  |
| Geler              | to freeze  | Il gele             | it freezes   |
| Dégeler            | to thaw    | Il dégele           | it thaws     |
| Suffire            | to suffice | Il suffit           | it suffices  |
| Faire des éclaires | to lighten | Il fait des éclairs | it lightens. |

The

The following example may be sufficient in order to learn how to conjugate any verb Impersonal of its nature:

Pleuvoir | To rain.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Il pleut | it rains.

Preter-Imperfect.

Il pleuvait | it rained.

Perfect Definite.

Il plut | it did rain.

Perfect Indefinite.

Il a plu | it has rained.

First Preterpluperfect.

Il avoit plu | it had rained.

Second Preterpluperfect.

Il eut plu | it had rained.

Future Tense.

Il pleuvra | it will rain.

CONJUNC-

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Qu'il pleuve | that it may rain.

Preter-Imperfect.

Qu'il plût | that it might rain.

Conditional Tense.

Il pleuvroit | it would rain.

Perfect Definite.

Qu'il aït plu | that it may have rained

First Preterpluperfect.

S'il avoit plu | if it had rained.

Second Preterpluperfect.

Il auroit plu | it would have rained.

Second Future.

Il aura plu | it will have rained.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

|                 |           |                 |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|
| <i>Present.</i> | Pleuvoir  | to rain         |
| <i>Perfect.</i> | Avoir plu | to have rained. |

*Gerund.*



*Gerund.*

|                    |             |               |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>Present.</i>    | En pleuvant | raining       |
| <i>Perfect.</i>    | Ayant plu   | having rained |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Plu         | rained.       |

The Indeterminate Particle *on*, which is commonly put before verbs through all their Tenses, composes the second sort of Impersonal Verbs. In this manner all Active and Neuter Verbs may become Impersonal, and are therefore conjugated only in the third person of the singular number; and the Particle *on* is rendered into English sometimes by the Personal Pronouns *we* or *they*, and sometimes by the Indeterminate Pronoun *one*.

Thus these French expressions,

|            |          |              |
|------------|----------|--------------|
| On voit    | On danse | On chantera  |
| On parloit | On lira  | On écrirait, |

Are properly rendered into English thus;

We see, they see, *or* one sees;

We spoke, they spoke, *or* one spoke;

We danced, they danced, *or* one danced;

We will read, they will read, *or* one *&c.*

We will sing, they will sing, *or* one *&c.*

We should write, they should write, *or* one *&c.*

And in the same manner of the rest through all Tenses.

Among the Impersonal Verbs in French we have the verb *avoir*, preceded by the Relative Particle *y*, and used only in the third person singular, whenever the English make use of the verb *to be*, joined with the Relative Adverb *there* in the third person, both Singular and Plural, as one may plainly see by the following Conjugation:

Y avoir | To be there.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present Tense.

|           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| S. Il y a | { S. there is   |
|           | { P. there are. |

##### Preter-Imperfect.

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| S. Il y avoit | { S. there was   |
|               | { P. there were. |

##### Perfect Definite.

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| S. Il y eut | { S. there was   |
|             | { P. there were. |

Perfect

Perfect Indefinite.

S. Il y a eu      { S. there has been  
                              P. there have been.

Preterpluperfect.

Il y avoit eu      { S. there had been  
                              P. there had been.

Future Tense.

S. Il y aura      { S. there shall be  
                              P. there shall be.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Qu'il y aît      { S. that there may be  
                              P. that there may be.

Preter-Imperfect.

S. Qu'il y eût      { S. that there might be  
                              P. that there might be

Conditional Tense.

S. Il y auroit      { S. there should be  
                              P. there should be.

And so on through the other Tenses.



*Of the Irregular VERBS.*

There are in French, as in other languages, some verbs which do not follow the general rules common to the regular verbs, by differing in the terminations or inflexions of some of their Tenses or Persons, and are therefore called Irregular.

Though the verbs of the first Conjugation are much more numerous than those of the other three, yet there are only two irregular verbs ending in the Infinitive in *er*. Among the verbs ending in *ir* and in *oir* a few are irregular, and there are a great many among those ending in *re*.

This matter, though highly important, very difficult, and exceedingly troublesome, has been always too much neglected by the French grammarians, who have done nothing more than lay down the Irregular Verbs, and exhort their Pupils to learn them by heart without the least assistance.

To



To avoid imitating the bad custom of too many of my brethren, and to help my scholars with the utmost care in the way of conjugating the Irregular Verbs with little trouble and in a short time, I have, in consequence of long experience and assiduous labour, the agreeable satisfaction of furnishing them with several observations, which will remove any difficulty whatever, and are indeed worthy of recollection.

A French verb may be irregular in the four simple Tenses, and in the four general Tenses, but never in the compound, in which we repeat the single Tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*.

However, there are very few verbs irregular through all the simple and general Tenses; for most of them are irregular only in the present of the Indicative Mood, some in the Perfect Definite, a few in the Future, and some also in the Gerund and Participle.

But

But when a verb is irregular in the Present of the Indicative, it is likewise irregular in the Imperative and the Present of the Conjunctive Mood, because of the affinity which is between those three Tenses.

It is the same with the Perfect Definite and the Future of the Indicative; for, if a verb is irregular in the former, it is also irregular in the Preter-Imperfect of the Conjunctive; and when it is irregular in the latter, it is likewise irregular in the Conditional Tense.

The irregularity of verbs with respect to the different endings of persons is generally met only in the Present of the Indicative, and consequently in the Imperative and the Present of the Conjunctive, as one may plainly see by the Conjugation of the following verb, one of the most irregular; which we give here as an example of all the irregular verbs in general, and in which we have purposely

posely neglected the usual order and distribution of Tenses, that the learner may more easily understand the rules common to several Tenses of different Moods:

Acquerir | To acquire.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I acquire)

|                         |  |                            |
|-------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'acquiers |  | <i>Plu.</i> Nous acquerons |
| Tu acquiers             |  | Vous acquerez              |
| Il acquiert             |  | Ils acquierent.            |

IMPERATIVE. (Acquire)

|                  |  |                       |
|------------------|--|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> ——— |  | <i>Plu.</i> Acquerons |
| Acquiers         |  | Acquerez              |
| Qu'il acquiere   |  | Qu'ils acquierent.    |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may acquire)

|                             |  |                                 |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que j'acquiere |  | <i>Plu.</i> Que nous acquerions |
| Que tu acquieres            |  | Que vous acqueriez              |
| Qu'il acquiere              |  | Qu'ils acquierent.              |

Hence it plainly appears:—

*First*; That the three persons Singular and the third person Plural of the Present

sent of the Indicative Mood of an irregular verb, though differently spelt, do not differ in sound, and they conform to the general rule concerning this Tense.

2dly; That the first and second persons Plural of the same Tense, as well as of the Imperative, and the Present of the Conjunctive (which are commonly regular in the Irregular Verbs ending in *er*, in *oir*, and in *re*) are irregular in the verbs ending in *ir*, in which the above persons suffer an abbreviation rather than an irregularity; for, instead of saying,

Nous acquerissons | Vous acquerissez

in the Present of the Indicative,

Acquerissons | Acquerissez

in the Imperative Mood, and

Que nous acquerissions | Que vous acquerissiez

in the Present of the Conjunctive, as we should if such persons were regular; we properly say, (perhaps for the sake of harmony) just as if they belonged to a verb of any other Conjugation than to the second,

M

Nous



|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Nous acquérons      | Vous acquerez       |
| Acquérons           | Acquerez            |
| Que nous acquerions | Que vous acqueriez. |

3<sup>dly</sup>; That in the Imperative Mood, which has never the first person, the third person Singular only is to be learned; for the second Singular, and the three persons Plural, are generally the same with the second Singular and the three persons Plural of the Present of the Indicative Mood, as in the regular verbs.

4<sup>thly</sup>; That the Present of the Con-junctive Mood, though irregular, follows the general rules in its irregularity; for the three persons Singular of that Tense are the same with the third person Singular in the Imperative, (if we except the second, which requires the addition of an *s*); the first and second persons Plural are the same with those of the Preter-Imperfect of the Indicative, and in the third Plural we repeat the third Plural of the Imperative in the same manner as in the regular verbs.

Imperfect

Imperfect of the Indicative.

(I acquired)

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'acquerois | <i>Plu.</i> Nous acquerions |
| Tu acquerois             | Vous acqueriez              |
| Il acqueroit             | Ils acqueroient.            |

All verbs ending in the Infinitive in *ir* are irregular in the Preter-Imperfect of the Indicative Mood, if they are irregular in any other Tense, but they are then conjugated in this Tense as if they belonged to the first Conjugation rather than to the second.

Perfect Definite of the Indicative.

(I did acquire)

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'acquis | <i>Plu.</i> Nous acquimes |
| Tu acquis             | Vous acquites             |
| Il acquit             | Ils acquirent.            |

Imperfect of the Conjunctive.

(That I might acquire)

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> Que j'acquiesse | <i>P.</i> Que nous acquies- |
|                              | sions                       |
| Que tu acquiesse             | Que vous acquiessez         |
| Qu'il acquît                 | Qu'ils acquissent.          |

M 2

Though

Though the Perfect Definite of the Indicative Mood, and consequently the Preter-Imperfect of the Conjunctive, of a French verb, be irregular, their terminations however are always regular; their irregularity consisting only in the omission, addition, or change of one or two letters, without any alteration in their endings.

#### Future of the Indicative.

(I shall *or* will acquire)

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'acquerrai | <i>Plu.</i> Nous acquerrons |
| Tu acquerras             | Vous acquerez               |
| Il acquerra              | Ils acquerront.             |

#### Conditional Tense.

(I should *or* would acquire)

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> J'acquerois | <i>Plu.</i> Nous acquerriions |
| Tu acquerrois            | Vous acquerriez               |
| Il acquerroit            | Ils acquerroient.             |

The irregularity of these two Tenses, whose affinity is so great that the one cannot be regular when the other is irregular, consists also only in the omission, addition, or change of one or two letters:

|                    |              |           |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En'acquerant | acquiring |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Acquis       | acquired. |

Gerunds have commonly the same irregularity with the Present of the Con-junctive, and Participles the same with the Perfect Definite.

After such plain and necessary re-marks, we must conclude that the scho-lar has no more than four words to learn by heart in the Conjugation of the most irregular French verb, viz.

|                                           |                  |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------|
| The first person Singular of the          | } of the Indica- |
| Present                                   |                  |
| The first Singular of the Perfect         |                  |
| Definite                                  |                  |
| The first Singular of the Future          | } tive Mood.     |
| and the third Singular of the Imperative: |                  |

since in the other persons of these Tenses we ought to follow both the irregularity depending upon the abbreviation of their first persons, and the regularity with re-spect to their invariable terminations.

Now as I must say,

J'acquiers, *instead of* j'acquerris,



in the first person Singular of the Present of the Indicative;

J'acquis, *instead of* j'acqueris,  
in the first Singular of the Perfect Definite of the same Mood; and

J'acquerrai, *instead of* j'acquerrai,  
in that of the Future Tense; such irregularities are not only to be observed through these three Tenses, as we have plainly seen before, but also through those which must be irregular in consequence of the affinity which is between them; therefore I say properly,

Acquiers, *instead of* acqueris,  
in the second person of the Imperative Mood, and

Que j'acquiere, *instead of* que j'acquerrisse,  
in the first person of the Present of the Conjunctive;

Que j'acquiesse, *instead of* que j'acquerrisse,  
in the first of the Imperfect of the same Mood, and

J'acquerois, *instead of* j'acquerrerois,  
in that of the Conditional Tense.

When a learner is well acquainted with the four Examples on the Conjugation of the regular verbs in the French language, through all their Moods and Tenses, he will have no difficulty to conjugate the irregular verbs in those Tenses which follow the general rules in their endings and inflexions; we therefore thought proper to omit in all the Conjugations of Irregular Verbs the Tenses which are conjugated in the like manner as in the regular. By such a method one may more easily perceive the irregularity of verbs, which is only met with in the Tenses laid down in the following Conjugations.

---

The CONJUGATION of the *Irregular Verbs*  
ending in ER.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I go)

| SINGULAR.                 | PLURAL.                   |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Je vais, <i>or</i> je vas | Nous allons               |
| Tu vas                    | Vous allez                |
| Il <i>or</i> elle; va     | Ils <i>or</i> elles vont. |

Future. (I shall *or* will go)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

J'irai

Nous irons

Tu iras

Vous irez

Il ira

Ils iront.

IMPERATIVE. (Go)

Vas

Allons

Qu'il aille

Allez

Qu'ils aillent.

CONJUNCTIVE Mood.

Present. (That I may go)

Que j'aille

Que nous allions

Que tu ailles

Que vous alliez

Qu'il aille

Qu'ils aillent.

Conditional. (I should *or* would go)

J'irois

Nous irions

Tu irois

Vous iriez

Il iroit

Ils iroient.

Envoyer

To send.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Future. (I shall *or* will send)

J'enverrai

Nous enverrons

Tu enverras

Vous enverrez

Il enverra

Ils enverront.

CONJUNC.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Conditional. (I should *or* would send)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

J' enverrois

Nous enverrions

Tu enverrois

Vous enverriez

Il enverroit

Ils enverroient.

The CONJUGATION of the *Irregular Verbs*  
ending in IR.

Bouillir | To boil.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I boil)

Je bous

Nous bouillons

Tu bous

Vous bouillez

Il bout

Ils bouillent.

Imperfect. (I boiled)

Je bouillois

Nous bouillions

Tu bouillois

Vous bouilliez

Il bouilloit

Ils bouilloient.

IMPERATIVE. (Boil)

Bous

Bouillons

Qu'il bouille

Bouillez

Qu'ils bouillent.

CONJUNC-



CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may boil)

| SINGULAR.       | PLURAL.             |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je bouille  | Que nous bouillions |
| Que tu bouilles | Que vous bouilliez  |
| Qu'il bouille   | Qu'ils bouillent.   |

*Gerund.* | En bouillant | boiling.

Courir | To run.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I run)

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Je cours | Nous courons |
| Tu cours | Vous courez  |
| Il court | Ils courent. |

Imperfect. (I ran)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je courois | Nous courions  |
| Tu courois | Vous couriez   |
| Il couroit | Ils couraient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did run)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je courus | Nous courumes  |
| Tu courus | Vous courutes  |
| Il courut | Ils coururent. |

Future.

Future. (I shall *or* will run)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.       |
|------------|---------------|
| Je courrai | Nous courrons |
| Tu courras | Vous courrez  |
| Il courra  | Ils courront. |

IMPERATIVE. (Run)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Cours       | Courons         |
| Qu'il coure | Courez          |
|             | Qu'ils courent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may run)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je coure  | Que nous courions |
| Que tu coures | Que vous couriez  |
| Qu'il coure   | Qu'ils courent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might run)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je courusse  | Que nous courussions |
| Que tu courusses | Que vous courussiez  |
| Qu'il courût     | Qu'ils courussent.   |

Conditional. (I should *or* would run)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je courrois | Nous courrions  |
| Tu courrois | Vous courriez   |
| Il courroit | Ils courroient. |

|             |            |         |
|-------------|------------|---------|
| Gerund.     | En courant | running |
| Participle. | Couru      | run.    |

Couvrir

Couvrir | To cover.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I cover)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.       |
|------------|---------------|
| Je couvre  | Nous couvrons |
| Tu couvres | Vous couvrez  |
| Il couvre  | Ils couvrent. |

Imperfect. (I covered)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je couvrois | Nous couvrions  |
| Tu couvrois | Vous couvriez   |
| Il couvroit | Ils couvroient. |

IMPERATIVE. (Cover)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| —            | Couvrons         |
| Couvres      | Couvrez          |
| Qu'il couvre | Qu'ils couvrent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may cover)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Que je couvre  | Que nous couvrions |
| Que tu couvres | Que vous couvriez  |
| Qu'il couvre   | Qu'ils couvrent.   |

|                    |             |          |
|--------------------|-------------|----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En couvrant | covering |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Couvert     | covered. |

Thus are conjugated the Irregular  
Verbs

Offrir

|            |           |              |
|------------|-----------|--------------|
| Offrir     | Ouvrir    | Souffrir     |
| (to offer) | (to open) | (to suffer.) |

---

Cueillir | To gather.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I gather)

| SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.        |
|-------------|----------------|
| Je cueille  | Nous cueillons |
| Tu cueilles | Vous cueillez  |
| Il cueille  | Ils cueillent. |

Imperfect. (I gathered)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Je cueillois | Nous cueillions  |
| Tu cueillois | Vous cueilliez   |
| Il cueilloit | Ils cueilloient. |

IMPERATIVE. (Gather)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
|               | Cueillons         |
| Cueilles      | Cueillez          |
| Qu'il cueille | Qu'ils cueillent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may gather)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je cueille  | Que nous cueillions |
| Que tu cueilles | Que vous cueilliez  |
| Qu'il cueille   | Qu'ils cueillent.   |

*Gerund.*



|                    |              |           |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En cueillant | gathering |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Cueilli      | gathered. |

Dormir | To sleep.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I sleep)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.      |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je dors   | Nous dormons |
| Tu dors   | Vous dormez  |
| Il dort   | Ils dorment. |

Imperfect. (I slept)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je dormois | Nous dormions  |
| Tu dormois | Vous dormiez   |
| Il dormoit | Ils dormoient. |

IMPERATIVE. (Sleep)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
|             | Dormons         |
| Dors        | Dormez          |
| Qu'il dorme | Qu'ils dorment. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may sleep)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je dorme  | Que nous dormions |
| Que tu dormes | Que vous dormiez  |
| Qu'il dorme   | Qu'ils dorment.   |

*Gerund.* | En dormant | sleeping.

Fuyr | To run away.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I run away)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je fuy | Nous fuyons |
| Tu fuy | Vous fuyez  |
| Il fuy | Ils fuyent. |

Imperfect. (I ran away)

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je fuyois | Nous fuyions  |
| Tu fuyois | Vous fuyiez   |
| Il fuyoit | Ils fuyoient. |

IMPERATIVE. (Run away)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| —          | Fuyons         |
| Fuy        | Fuyez          |
| Qu'il fuye | Qu'ils fuyent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may run away)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Que je fuye  | Que nous fuyions |
| Que tu fuyes | Que vous fuyiez  |
| Qu'il fuye   | Qu'ils fuyent.   |

*Gerund.* | En fuyant | running away.

Though the verb *hâir* (to hate) is not irregular, yet it may be reckoned in the number

number of the irregular verbs with respect only to the different pronunciation of the Diphthong *ai* according to the different Orthography; for when there is only one dot over the *i*, the Diphthong *ai* sounds like a French open *e*, according to the general rule, as *hais* (hate), and when the *i* is marked over with two dots, then both vowels *a* and *i* are to be pronounced separately according to their natural sound; but the consonant *h* is always aspirated.

Hair | To hate.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I hate)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je hais   | Nous haïssons |
| Tu hais   | Vous haïssez  |
| Il hait   | Ils haïssent. |

Imperfect. (I hated)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je haïssois | Nous haïssions  |
| Tu haïssois | Vous haïssez    |
| Il haïssoit | Ils haïssaient. |

IMPERA-

IMPERATIVE. (Hate)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Hais

Qu'il haïsse

Haïffons

Haïffez

Qu'ils haïffent.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may hate)

Que je haïsse

Que tu haïffes

Qu'il haïsse

Que nous haïffions

Que vous haïffiez

Qu'ils haïffent.

*Gerund.*

*Participle.*

En haïffant

Haï

hating

hated.

Se repentir

To repent.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I repent)

Je me repents

Tu te repents

Il se repent

Nous nous repentons

Vous vous repentez

Ils se repentent.

Imperfect. (I repented)

Je me repentois

Tu te repentois

Il se repentoit

Nous nous repentions

Vous vous repentiez

Ils se repentoient.

N

IMPERA-



IMPERATIVE. (Repent)

| SINGULAR.        | PLURAL.              |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Repents-toi      | Repentons-nous       |
| Qu'il se repente | Repentez-vous        |
|                  | Qu'ils se repentent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may repent)

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Que je me repente  | Que nous nous repen-<br>tions |
| Que tu te repentes | Que vous vous repen-<br>tiez  |
| Qu'ils se repente  | Qu'ils se repentent.          |

*Gerund.* | En se repentant | repenting.

After the same manner are to be conjugated these four verbs through all their Tenses:

|        |           |        |            |
|--------|-----------|--------|------------|
| Mentir | to lie    | Sentir | to feel    |
| Partir | to depart | Sortir | to go out. |

Mourir | To die.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I die)

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Je meurs | Nous mourons |
| Tu meurs | Vous mourez  |
| Il meurt | Ils meurent. |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (I died)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.        |
|------------|----------------|
| Je mourais | Nous mourions  |
| Tu mourais | Vous mouriez   |
| Il mourait | Ils mouraient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did die)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je mourus | Nous mourumes  |
| Tu mourus | Vous mourutes  |
| Il mourut | Ils moururent. |

Future. (I shall or will die)

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| Je mourrai | Nous mourrons |
| Tu mourras | Vous mourrez  |
| Il mourra  | Ils mourront. |

IMPERATIVE. (Die)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Meurs       | Mourons         |
| Qu'il meure | Mourez          |
|             | Qu'ils meurent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may die)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je meure  | Que nous mourions |
| Que tu meures | Que vous mouriez  |
| Qu'il meure   | Qu'ils meurent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might die)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je mourusse  | Que nous mourussions |
| Que tu mourusses | Que vous mourussiez  |
| Qu'il mourût     | Qu'ils mourussent.   |

Conditional. (I should *or* would die)

| SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.         |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je mourrois | Nous mourrions  |
| Tu mourrois | Vous mourriez   |
| Il mourroit | Ils mourroient. |

|                    |            |       |
|--------------------|------------|-------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En mourant | dying |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Mort       | dead. |

Servir | To serve.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I serve)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je sers | Nous servons |
| Tu sers | Vous servez  |
| Il sert | Ils servent. |

Imperfect. (I served)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je servois | Nous servions  |
| Tu servois | Vous serviez   |
| Il servoit | Ils servoient. |

IMPERATIVE. (Serve)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Sers        | Servons         |
| Qu'il serve | Servez          |
|             | Qu'ils servent. |

CONJUNC-

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may serve)

| SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.           |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je serve  | Que nous servions |
| Que tu serves | Que vous serviez  |
| Qu'il serve   | Qu'ils servent.   |

Gerund. | En servant | serving.

Venir | To come.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I come)

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Je viens | Nous venons   |
| Tu viens | Vous venez    |
| Il vient | Ils viennent. |

Imperfect. (I came)

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je venois | Nous venions  |
| Tu venois | Vous veniez   |
| Il venoit | Ils venoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did come)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je vins | Nous vinmes  |
| Tu vins | Vous vintes  |
| Il vint | Ils vinrent. |



Future. (I shall *or* will come)

| SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.        |
|-------------|----------------|
| Je viendrai | Nous viendrons |
| Tu viendras | Vous viendrez  |
| Il viendra  | Ils viendront. |

IMPERATIVE. (Come)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Viens        | Venons           |
| Qu'il vienne | Venez            |
|              | Qu'ils viennent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may come)

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| Que je vienne  | Que nous venions |
| Que tu viennes | Que vous veniez  |
| Qu'il vienne   | Qu'ils viennent. |

Imperfect. (That I might come)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Que je vinse   | Que nous vinssions |
| Que tu vinsses | Que vous vinssiez  |
| Qu'il vînt     | Qu'ils vinsent.    |

Conditional. (I should *or* would come)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Je viendrais | Nous viendrions  |
| Tu viendrais | Vous viendriez   |
| Il viendrait | Ils viendraient. |

|             |           |        |
|-------------|-----------|--------|
| Gerund.     | En venant | coming |
| Participle. | Venu      | come.  |

Thus

Thus is to be conjugated the verb

Tenir | To hold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I hold)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|          |  |               |
|----------|--|---------------|
| Je tiens |  | Nous tenons   |
| Tu tiens |  | Vous tenez    |
| Il tient |  | Ils tiennent, |

and so on through all its Tenses.

The CONJUGATION of the *Irregular Verbs*  
ending in OIR.

S'asseoir | To sit down.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I sit down)

|              |  |                    |
|--------------|--|--------------------|
| Je m'asseois |  | Nous nous asseyons |
| Tu t'asseois |  | Vous vous asseyez  |
| Il s'asseoit |  | Ils s'asseoient.   |

Imperfect. (I sat down)

|               |  |                     |
|---------------|--|---------------------|
| Je m'asseyois |  | Nous nous asseyions |
| Tu t'asseyois |  | Vous vous asseyiez  |
| Il s'asseyoit |  | Ils s'asseyoient.   |

Perfect

Perfect Definite. (I did sit down)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.           |
|------------|-------------------|
| Je m'affis | Nous nous assimes |
| Tu t'affis | Vous vous assites |
| Il s'affit | Ils s'assirent.   |

Future. (I shall or will sit down)

|                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| Je m'assayerai | Nous nous assayerons |
| Tu t'assayeras | Vous vous asserez    |
| Il s'assiera   | Ils s'assieront.     |

IMPERATIVE. (Sit down)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Assis-toi     | Assayons-nous     |
| Qu'il s'assie | Assiez-vous       |
|               | Qu'ils s'assient. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may sit down)

|                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| Que je m'assie  | Que nous nous assie- |
|                 | ons                  |
| Que tu t'assies | Que vous vous assiez |
| Qu'il s'assie   | Qu'ils s'assient.    |

Imperfect. (That I might sit down)

|                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Que je m'assisse  | Que nous nous assissi-  |
|                   | ons                     |
| Que tu t'assisses | Que vous vous assissiez |
| Qu'il s'assît     | Qu'il s'assissent.      |

Conditional.

Conditional. (I should *or* would sit down)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je m'assejerois

Nous nous assiegerions

Tu t'assejerois

Vous vous assiegeriez

Il s'assejeroit

Ils s'assejeroient.

*Gerund.*

En s'asseyant

sitting down

S'étant assis

having sit down

*Participle.*

Assis

fit down.

Devoir

| To owe.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I owe)

Je dois

Nous devons

Tu dois

Vous devez

Il doit

Ils doivent.

Imperfect. (I owed)

Je devois

Nous devions

Tu devois

Vous deviez

Il devoit

Ils devoient.

Perfect Definite. (I *did* owe)

Je dus

Nous dumes

Tu dus

Vous dutes

Il dut

Ils durent.

Future.



Future. (I shall *or* will owe)

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|           |  |              |
|-----------|--|--------------|
| Je devrai |  | Nous devrons |
|-----------|--|--------------|

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| Tu devras |  | Vous devrez |
|-----------|--|-------------|

|          |  |              |
|----------|--|--------------|
| Il devra |  | Ils devront. |
|----------|--|--------------|

IMPERATIVE. (Owe)

|       |  |        |
|-------|--|--------|
| _____ |  | Devons |
|-------|--|--------|

|      |  |       |
|------|--|-------|
| Dois |  | Devez |
|------|--|-------|

|             |  |                 |
|-------------|--|-----------------|
| Qu'il doive |  | Qu'ils doivent. |
|-------------|--|-----------------|

## CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may owe)

|              |  |                  |
|--------------|--|------------------|
| Que je doive |  | Que nous devions |
|--------------|--|------------------|

|               |  |                 |
|---------------|--|-----------------|
| Que tu doives |  | Que vous deviez |
|---------------|--|-----------------|

|             |  |                 |
|-------------|--|-----------------|
| Qu'il doive |  | Qu'ils doivent. |
|-------------|--|-----------------|

Imperfect. (That I might owe)

|              |  |                   |
|--------------|--|-------------------|
| Que je dusse |  | Que nous dussions |
|--------------|--|-------------------|

|               |  |                  |
|---------------|--|------------------|
| Que tu dusses |  | Que vous dussiez |
|---------------|--|------------------|

|           |  |                 |
|-----------|--|-----------------|
| Qu'il dût |  | Qu'ils dussent. |
|-----------|--|-----------------|

Conditional. (I should *or* would owe)

|            |  |               |
|------------|--|---------------|
| Je devrois |  | Nous devrions |
|------------|--|---------------|

|            |  |              |
|------------|--|--------------|
| Tu devrois |  | Vous devriez |
|------------|--|--------------|

|            |  |                |
|------------|--|----------------|
| Il devrait |  | Ils devraient. |
|------------|--|----------------|

|         |  |           |  |       |
|---------|--|-----------|--|-------|
| Gerund. |  | En devant |  | owing |
|---------|--|-----------|--|-------|

|             |  |    |  |       |
|-------------|--|----|--|-------|
| Participle. |  | Dû |  | owed. |
|-------------|--|----|--|-------|

Mouvoir

Mouvoir | To move.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I move)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.      |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je meus   | Nous mouvons |
| Tu meus   | Vous mouvez  |
| Il meut   | Ils meuvent. |

Perfect Definite. (I moved)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je mus | Nous mumes  |
| Tu mus | Vous mutes  |
| Il mut | Ils murent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Move)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| —           | Mouvons         |
| Meus        | Mouvez          |
| Qu'il meuve | Qu'ils meuvent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may move)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je meuve  | Que nous mouvions |
| Que tu meuves | Que vous moviez   |
| Qu'il meuve   | Qu'ils meuvent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might move)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je musse  | Que nous mussions |
| Que tu musses | Que vous mussiez  |
| Qu'il mût     | Qu'ils mussent.   |

*Gerund.*

|                    |            |        |
|--------------------|------------|--------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En mouvant | moving |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Mu         | moved. |

Pouvoir | To be able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I am able)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.      |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je peux   | Nous pouvons |
| Tu peux   | Vous pouvez  |
| Il peut   | Ils peuvent. |

Imperfect. (I was able)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je pouvois | Nous pouvions  |
| Tu pouvois | Vous pouviez   |
| Il pouvoit | Ils pouvoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I was able)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je pus | Nous pumes  |
| Tu pus | Vous putes  |
| Il put | Ils purent. |

Future. (I shall or will be able)

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| Je pourrai | Nous pourrons |
| Tu pourras | Vous pourrez  |
| Il pourra  | Ils pourront. |

CONJUNC-

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may be able)

| SINGULAR.      | PLURAL.            |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Que je puisse  | Que nous puissions |
| Que tu puisses | Que vous puissiez  |
| Qu'il puisse   | Qu'ils puissent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might be able)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je pusse  | Que nous pussions |
| Que tu pusses | Que vous pussiez  |
| Qu'il pût     | Qu'ils pussent.   |

Conditional. (I should *or* would be able)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je pourrais | Nous pourrions  |
| Tu pourrais | Vous pourriez   |
| Il pourroit | Ils pourroient. |

|             |            |            |
|-------------|------------|------------|
| Gerund.     | En pouvant | being able |
| Participle. | Pu         | been able. |

Savoir | To know.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I know)

|         |             |
|---------|-------------|
| Je fais | Nous savons |
| Tu fais | Vous savez  |
| Il fait | Ils savent. |

Imperfect.



Imperfect. (I knew)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je favois | Nous favions  |
| Tu favois | Vous saviez   |
| Il favoit | Ils favoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did know)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je fus | Nous fumes  |
| Tu fus | Vous futes  |
| Il fut | Ils furent. |

Future. (I shall or will know)

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je saurai | Nous saurons |
| Tu sauras | Vous saurez  |
| Il saura  | Ils sauront. |

IMPERATIVE. (Know)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| —           | Sachons         |
| Saches      | Sachez          |
| Qu'il sache | Qu'ils sachent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may know)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je sache  | Que nous sachions |
| Que tu saches | Que vous sachiez  |
| Qu'il sache   | Qu'ils sachent.   |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (That I might know)

| SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.           |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je fusse  | Que nous fussions |
| Que tu fusses | Que vous fussiez  |
| Qu'il fût     | Qu'ils fussent.   |

Conditional. (I should or would know)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je saurois | Nous saurions  |
| Tu saurois | Vous sauriez   |
| Il sauroit | Ils sauroient. |

|                    |            |         |
|--------------------|------------|---------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En sachant | knowing |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Su         | known.  |

Valoir | To be worth.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I am worth)

|         |             |
|---------|-------------|
| Je vaux | Nous valons |
| Tu vaux | Vous valez  |
| Il vaut | Ils valent. |

Imperfect. (I was worth)

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je valois | Nous valions  |
| Tu valois | Vous valiez   |
| Il valoit | Ils valoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I was worth)

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Je valus | Nous valumes  |
| Tu valus | Vous valutes  |
| Il valut | Ils valurent. |

Future. (I shall *or* will be worth)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.       |
|------------|---------------|
| Je vaudrai | Nous vaudrons |
| Tu vaudras | Vous vaudrez  |
| Il vaudra  | Ils vaudront. |

IMPERATIVE. (Be worth)

|              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| Vaux         | Valons          |
| Qu'il vaille | Valez           |
|              | Qu'ils valient. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may be worth)

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| Que je vaille  | Que nous valions |
| Que tu vailles | Que vous valiez  |
| Qu'il vaille   | Qu'ils valient.  |

Imperfect. (That I might be worth)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je valusse  | Que nous valussions |
| Que tu valusses | Que vous valussiez  |
| Qu'il valût     | Qu'ils valussent.   |

Conditional. (I should *or* would be worth)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je vaudrais | Nous vaudrions  |
| Tu vaudrais | Vous vaudriez   |
| Il vaudrait | Ils vaudroient. |

|             |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Gerund.     | En valant | being worth |
| Participle. | Valu      | been worth. |

Voir

Voir | To see.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I see)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.     |
|-----------|-------------|
| Je vois   | Nous voyons |
| Tu vois   | Vous voyez  |
| Il voit   | Ils voient. |

Imperfect. (I saw)

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je voyois | Nous voyions  |
| Tu voyois | Vous voyiez   |
| Il voyoit | Ils voyoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did see)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je vis | Nous vîmes  |
| Tu vis | Vous vîtes  |
| Il vit | Ils virent. |

Future. (I shall or will see)

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je verrai | Nous verrons |
| Tu verras | Vous verrez  |
| Il verra  | Ils verront. |

IMPERATIVE. (See)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Vois       | Voyons         |
| Qu'il voie | Voyez          |
|            | Qu'ils voient. |

O

CONJUNC-



CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may see)

| SINGULAR.    | PLURAL.          |
|--------------|------------------|
| Que je voie  | Que nous voyions |
| Que tu voies | Que vous voyiez  |
| Qu'il voie   | Qu'ils voient    |

Imperfect. (That I might see)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je visse  | Que nous vissions |
| Que tu visses | Que vous vissiez  |
| Qu'il vît     | Qu'ils vissent.   |

Conditional. (I should or would see)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je verrois | Nous verrions  |
| Tu verrois | Vous verriez   |
| Il verroit | Ils verroient. |

|             |           |        |
|-------------|-----------|--------|
| Gerund.     | En voyant | seeing |
| Participle. | Vu        | seen.  |

Vouloir | To be willing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I am willing)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je veux | Nous voulons |
| Tu veux | Vous voulez  |
| Il veut | Ils veulent. |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (I was willing)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je voulois | Nous voulions  |
| Tu voulois | Vous vouliez   |
| Il vouloit | Ils vouloient. |

Perfect Definite. (I was willing)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je voulus | Nous voulumes  |
| Tu voulus | Vous voulutes  |
| Il voulut | Ils voulurent. |

Future. (I shall *or* will be willing)

|            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| Je voudrai | Nous voudrons |
| Tu voudras | Vous voudrez  |
| Il voudra  | Ils voudront. |

CONJUNCTIVE Mood.

Present. (That I may be willing)

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Que je veuille  | Que nous voulions |
| Que tu veuilles | Que vous vouliez  |
| Qu'il veuille   | Qu'ils veuillent. |

Imperfect. (That I might be willing)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je voulusse  | Que nous voulussions |
| Que tu voulusses | Que vous voulussiez  |
| Qu'il voulût     | Qu'ils voulussent.   |

Conditional. (I should *or* would be willing)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je voudrois  
Tu voudrois  
Il voudroit

Nous voudrions  
Vous voudriez  
Ils voudroient.

*Gerund.*

En voulant

being willing

*Participle.*

Voulu

been willing.

The CONJUGATION of the *Irregular Verbs*  
ending in RE.

Boire

To drink.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I drink)

Je bois  
Tu bois  
Il boit

Nous buvons  
Vous buvez  
Ils boivent.

Imperfect. (I drank)

Je buvois  
Tu buvois  
Il buvoit

Nous buvions  
Vous buviez  
Ils buvoient.

Perfect Definite. (I did drink)

Je bus  
Tu bus  
Il but

Nous bumes  
Vous butes  
Ils burent.

IMPERA-

IMPERATIVE. (Drink)

| SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.         |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Bois        | Buvons          |
| Qu'il boive | Buvez           |
|             | Qu'ils boivent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may drink)

|               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| Que je boive  | Que nous buvions |
| Que tu boives | Que vous buviez  |
| Qu'il boive   | Qu'ils boivent.  |

Imperfect. (That I might drink)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je buffe  | Que nous buffions |
| Que tu buffes | Que vous buffiez  |
| Qu'il bût     | Qu'ils buffent.   |

|                    |           |          |
|--------------------|-----------|----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En buvant | drinking |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Bu        | drunk.   |

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Conclure | To conclude. |
|----------|--------------|

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I conclude)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je conclus | Nous concluons |
| Tu conclus | Vous concluez  |
| Il conclut | Ils concluent. |

O 3

Perfect



Perfect Definite. (I concluded)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.        |
|------------|----------------|
| Je conclus | Nous concluons |
| Tu conclus | Vous concluez  |
| Il conclut | Ils concluent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Conclude)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Conclus       | Concluons         |
| Qu'il conclue | Concluez          |
|               | Qu'ils concluent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

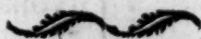
Present. (That I may conclude)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je conclue  | Que nous concluions |
| Que tu conclues | Que vous concluez   |
| Qu'il conclue   | Qu'ils concluent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might conclude)

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| Que je conclusse  | Que nous concluissions |
| Que tu conclusses | Que vous conclussiez   |
| Qu'il conclût     | Qu'ils conclussent.    |

|             |              |            |
|-------------|--------------|------------|
| Gerund.     | En concluant | concluding |
| Participle. | Conclu       | concluded. |



Conduire

Conduire | To lead.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I lead)

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.         |
|------------|-----------------|
| Je conduis | Nous conduisons |
| Tu conduis | Vous conduisez  |
| Il conduit | Ils conduisent. |

Imperfect. (I led)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Je conduisois | Nous conduisions  |
| Tu conduisois | Vous conduisiez   |
| Il conduisoit | Ils conduisoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did lead)

|              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Je conduisis | Nous conduisîmes  |
| Tu conduisis | Vous conduisîtes  |
| Il conduisit | Ils conduisirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Lead)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Conduis        | Conduisons         |
| Qu'il conduise | Conduisez          |
|                | Qu'ils conduisent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may lead)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je conduise  | Que nous conduisions |
| Que tu conduises | Que vous conduisiez  |
| Qu'il conduise   | Qu'ils conduisent.   |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (That I might lead)

| SINGULAR.           | PLURAL.                 |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| Que je conduisisse  | Que nous conduisissions |
| Que tu conduisisses | Que vous conduisissiez  |
| Qu'il conduisît     | Qu'ils conduisissent.   |
| Gerund.             | En conduisant   leading |
| Participle.         | Conduit   led.          |

All Verbs ending, in French, in the Infinitive Mood in *uire*, such as, Traduire | to translate || Nuire | to hurt, are irregular, and conjugated through all their Tenses as the Verb *conduire*.

Connoître | To know.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I know)

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| Je connois | Nous connoissons |
| Tu connois | Vous connoissez  |
| Il connoit | Ils connoissent. |

Imperfect. (I knew)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Je connoissois | Nous connoissions  |
| Tu connoissois | Vous connoissiez   |
| Il connoissoit | Ils connoissoient. |

Perfect

Perfect Definite. (I did know)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.        |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je connus | Nous connûmes  |
| Tu connus | Vous connûtes  |
| Il connut | Ils connurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Know)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Connois         | Connoissons         |
| Qu'il connoisse | Connoissez          |
|                 | Qu'ils connoissent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may know)

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Que je connoisse  | Que nous connoissions |
| Que tu connoisses | Que vous connoissiez  |
| Qu'il connoisse   | Qu'ils connoissent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might know)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je connusse  | Que nous connussions |
| Que tu connusses | Que vous connussiez  |
| Qu'il connût     | Qu'ils connussent.   |

|             |                |         |
|-------------|----------------|---------|
| Gerund.     | En connoissant | knowing |
| Participle. | Connu          | known.  |

All Verbs ending, in French, in the Infinitive Mood in *ôître*, such as,

Parôître | to appear || Croître | to grow, are



are irregular, and conjugated through all their Tenses like the Verb *connoître*.

Coudre | To sew.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I sew)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Je couds | Nous cousons |
| Tu couds | Vous cousez  |
| Il coud  | Ils cousent. |

Imperfect. (I sewed)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je cousois | Nous cousions  |
| Tu cousois | Vous cousiez   |
| Il cousoit | Ils cousoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did sew)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je cousus | Nous cousumes  |
| Tu cousus | Vous cousutes  |
| Il cousut | Ils cousurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Sew)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Couds       | Cousons         |
| Qu'il coufe | Coulez          |
|             | Qu'ils cousent. |

CONJUNG,

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may sew)

| SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.           |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je couse  | Que nous cousions |
| Que tu coufes | Que vous coufiez  |
| Qu'il coufe   | Qu'ils coufent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might sew)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je coufuffe  | Que nous coufuffions |
| Que tu coufuffes | Que vous coufuffiez  |
| Qu'il coufût     | Qu'ils coufuffent.   |

|                    |            |        |
|--------------------|------------|--------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En coufant | sewing |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Coufu      | sewed. |

Craindre | To fear.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I fear)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je crains | Nous craignons |
| Tu crains | Vous craignez  |
| Il craint | Ils craignent. |

Imperfect. (I feared)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Je craignois | Nous craignons   |
| Tu craignois | Vous craigniez   |
| Il craignoit | Ils craignoient. |

Perfect

Perfect Definite. (I did fear)

| SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.          |
|-------------|------------------|
| Je craignis | Nous craignimes  |
| Tu craignis | Vous craignites  |
| Il craignit | Ils craignirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Fear)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Crains        | Craignons         |
| Qu'il craigne | Craignez          |
|               | Qu'ils craignent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may fear)

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Que je craigne  | Que nous craignons |
| Que tu craignes | Que vous craigniez |
| Qu'il craigne   | Qu'ils craignent.  |

Imperfect. (That I might fear)

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Que je craignisse  | Que nous craignissions |
| Que tu craignisses | Que vous craignissiez  |
| Qu'il craignît     | Qu'ils craignissent.   |

|             |              |         |
|-------------|--------------|---------|
| Gerund.     | En craignant | fearing |
| Participle. | Craint       | feared. |

After the same manner are to be conjugated, through all Tenses, the Verbs ending in the Infinitive

In

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| In <i>aindre</i> , as plaindre | to pity<br>to paint<br>to join, |
| In <i>eindre</i> , as peindre  |                                 |
| In <i>oindre</i> , as joindre  |                                 |

which are all irregular.

Croire | To believe.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I believe)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.      |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je crois  | Nous croyons |
| Tu crois  | Vous croyez  |
| Il croit  | Ils croient. |

Imperfect. (I believed)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je croyais | Nous croyions  |
| Tu croyais | Vous croyiez   |
| Il croyait | Ils croyoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did believe)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je crus | Nous crûmes  |
| Tu crus | Vous crûtes  |
| Il crut | Ils crurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Believe)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Crois       | Croyons         |
| Qu'il croie | Croyez          |
|             | Qu'ils croient. |

CONJUNC-



CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may believe)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je croie  | Que nous croyions |
| Que tu croies | Que vous croyiez  |
| Qu'il croie   | Qu'ils croient.   |

Imperfect. (That I might believe)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Que je crusse  | Que nous crussions |
| Que tu crusses | Que vous crussiez  |
| Qu'il crût     | Qu'ils crussent.   |

|                    |            |           |
|--------------------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En croyant | believing |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Cru        | believed. |

Dire | To tell *or* to say.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I tell *or* say)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je dis | Nous disons |
| Tu dis | Vous dites  |
| Il dit | Ils disent. |

Imperfect. (I told *or* said)

|           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je disois | Nous disions  |
| Tu disois | Vous disiez   |
| Il disoit | Ils disoient. |

Perfect.

Perfect Definite. (I did tell *or* say)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.     |
|-----------|-------------|
| Je dis    | Nous dimes  |
| Tu dis    | Vous dites  |
| Il dit    | Ils dirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Tell *or* say)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Dis        | Difons         |
| Qu'il dise | Dites          |
|            | Qu'ils disent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may tell *or* say)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Que je dise  | Que nous difions |
| Que tu dises | Que vous disiez  |
| Qu'il dise   | Qu'ils disent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might tell *or* say)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je disse  | Que nous diffions |
| Que tu disses | Que vous diffiez  |
| Qu'il dît     | Qu'ils diffent.   |

|             |           |         |
|-------------|-----------|---------|
| Gerund.     | En disant | telling |
| Participle. | Dit       | told.   |

Thus is to be conjugated the Verb *con-*  
*fire* (to candy) through all its Tenses.

Ecrire

Ecrire | To write.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I write)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|          |  |               |
|----------|--|---------------|
| J' écris |  | Nous écrivons |
| Tu écris |  | Vous écrivez  |
| Il écrit |  | Ils écrivent. |

Imperfect. (I wrote)

|             |  |                 |
|-------------|--|-----------------|
| J' écrivais |  | Nous écrivions  |
| Tu écrivais |  | Vous écriviez   |
| Il écrivait |  | Ils écrivoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did write)

|            |  |                 |
|------------|--|-----------------|
| J' écrivis |  | Nous écrivîmes  |
| Tu écrivis |  | Vous écrivîtes  |
| Il écrivit |  | Ils écrivirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Write)

|              |  |                  |
|--------------|--|------------------|
| _____        |  | Ecrivons         |
| Ecris        |  | Ecrivez          |
| Qu'il écrive |  | Qu'ils écrivent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may write)

|                |  |                    |
|----------------|--|--------------------|
| Que j' écrive  |  | Que nous écrivions |
| Que tu écrives |  | Que vous écriviez  |
| Qu'il écrive   |  | Qu'ils écrivent.   |

Imperfect!

Imperfect. (That I might write)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Que j'ècrivisse   | Que nous ècrivissions |
| Que tu ècrivisses | Que vous ècrivissiez  |
| Qu'il ècrivît     | Qu'ils ècrivissent.   |

|             |             |          |
|-------------|-------------|----------|
| Gerund.     | En ècrivant | writing  |
| Participle. | Ecrit       | written. |

Faire | To make *or* to do.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I make *or* do)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je fais | Nous faisons |
| Tu fais | Vous faites  |
| Il fait | Ils font.    |

Imperfect. (I made *or* did)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je faisois | Nous faisions  |
| Tu faisois | Vous faisiez   |
| Il faisoit | Ils faisoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did *or* made)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je fis | Nous fimes  |
| Tu fis | Vous fites  |
| Il fit | Ils firent. |

P

IMPERA-



IMPERATIVE. (Do *or* make)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Fais

Qu'il fasse

Faisons

Faites

Qu'ils fassent.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may do *or* make)

Que je fasse

Que tu fasses

Qu'il fasse

Que nous fassions

Que vous fassiez

Qu'ils fassent.

Imperfect. (That I might do *or* make)

Que je fissé

Que tu fisses

Qu'il fit

Que nous fissions

Que vous fissiez

Qu'ils fissent.

*Gerund.*

En faisant

doing

*Participle.*

Fait

done.

Lire

| To read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I read)

Je lis

Tu lis

Il lit

Nous lisons

Vous lisez

Ils lisent.

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (I was reading)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je lisois | Nous lisions  |
| Tu lisois | Vous lisiez   |
| Il lisoit | Ils lisoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did read)

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| Je lus | Nous lumes  |
| Tu lus | Vous lutes  |
| Il lut | Ils lurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Read)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Lis        | Lisons         |
| Qu'il lise | Lisez          |
|            | Qu'ils lisent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may read)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Que je lise  | Que nous lisions |
| Que tu lises | Que vous lisiez  |
| Qu'il lise   | Qu'ils lisent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might read)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je lusse  | Que nous lussions |
| Que tu lusses | Que vous lussiez  |
| Qu'il lût     | Qu'ils lussent.   |

|             |           |         |
|-------------|-----------|---------|
| Gerund.     | En lisant | reading |
| Participle. | Lu        | read.   |

Mettre | To put.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I put)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|         |  |              |
|---------|--|--------------|
| Je mets |  | Nous mettons |
| Tu mets |  | Vous mettez  |
| Il met  |  | Ils mettent. |

Perfect Definite. (I did put)

|        |  |             |
|--------|--|-------------|
| Je mis |  | Nous mimes  |
| Tu mis |  | Vous mites  |
| Il mit |  | Ils mirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Put)

|             |  |                 |
|-------------|--|-----------------|
| _____       |  | Mettons         |
| Mets        |  | Mettez          |
| Qu'il mette |  | Qu'ils mettent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may put)

|               |  |                   |
|---------------|--|-------------------|
| Que je mette  |  | Que nous mettions |
| Que tu mettes |  | Que vous mettiez  |
| Qu'il mette   |  | Qu'ils mettent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might put)

|               |  |                   |
|---------------|--|-------------------|
| Que je misse  |  | Que nous missions |
| Que tu misses |  | Que vous missiez  |
| Qu'il mît     |  | Qu'ils missent.   |

*Gerund.*

|                    |            |         |
|--------------------|------------|---------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En mettant | putting |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Mis        | put.    |

Moudre | To grind.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I grind)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.      |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je mouds  | Nous moulons |
| Tu mouds  | Vous moulez  |
| Il moud   | Ils moulent. |

Imperfect. (I ground)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je moulois | Nous moulions  |
| Tu moulois | Vous mouliez   |
| Il mouloit | Ils mouloient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did grind)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je moulus | Nous moulumes  |
| Tu moulus | Vous moulutes  |
| Il moulut | Ils moulurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Grind)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
|             | Moulons         |
| Mouds       | Moulez          |
| Qu'il moule | Qu'ils moulent. |



CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may grind)

| SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.           |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je moule  | Que nous moulions |
| Que tu moules | Que vous mouliez  |
| Qu'il moule   | Qu'ils moulent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might grind)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je moulusse  | Que nous moulussions |
| Que tu moulusses | Que vous moulussiez  |
| Qu'il moulût     | Qu'ils moulussent.   |

|                    |            |          |
|--------------------|------------|----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En moulant | grinding |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Moulu      | ground.  |

Naître | To be born.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I am born)

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| Je nais | Nous naissions |
| Tu nais | Vous naissiez  |
| Il nait | Ils naissent.  |

Imperfect. (I was born)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je naissais | Nous naissions  |
| Tu naissais | Vous naissiez   |
| Il naissait | Ils naissoient. |

Perfect

Perfect Definite. (I was born)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.        |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je naquis | Nous naquimes  |
| Tu naquis | Vous naquites  |
| Il naquit | Ils naquirent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may be born)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Que je naiffe  | Que nous naiffions |
| Que tu naiffes | Que vous naiffiez  |
| Qu'il naiffe   | Qu'ils naiffent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might be born)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je naquiffe  | Que nous naquiffions |
| Que tu naquiffes | Que vous naquiffiez  |
| Qu'il naquît     | Qu'ils naquiffent.   |

|                    |             |            |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En naiffant | being born |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Né          | been born. |

Plaire | To please.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I please)

|          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| Je plais | Nous plaifons |
| Tu plais | Vous plaifez  |
| Il plait | Ils plaifent. |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (I pleased)

| SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.         |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Je plaisois | Nous plaissions |
| Tu plaisois | Vous plaissiez  |
| Il plaisoit | Ils plaisoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did please)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je plus | Nous plumes  |
| Tu plus | Vous plutes  |
| Il plut | Ils plurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Please)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Plais        | Plaissions       |
| Qu'il plaise | Plaidez          |
|              | Qu'ils plaisent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may please)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je plaise   | Que nous plaissions |
| Que tu plaisses | Que vous plaissiez  |
| Qu'il plaise    | Qu'ils plaisent.    |

Imperfect. (That I might please)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Que je plusse  | Que nous plussions |
| Que tu plusses | Que vous plussiez  |
| Qu'il plût     | Qu'ils plussent.   |

|             |              |          |
|-------------|--------------|----------|
| Gerund.     | En plaissant | pleasing |
| Participle. | Plu          | pleased. |

Prendre

Prendre | To take.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I take)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|---------------|
| Je prends | Nous prenons  |
| Tu prends | Vous prenez   |
| Il prend  | Ils prennent. |

Imperfect. (I took)

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| Je prenois | Nous prenions  |
| Tu prenois | Vous preniez   |
| Il prenoit | Ils prenoient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did take)

|         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| Je pris | Nous primes  |
| Tu pris | Vous prites  |
| Il prit | Ils prirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Take)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Prends       | Prenons          |
| Qu'il prenne | Prenez           |
|              | Qu'ils prennent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may take)

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Que je prenne  | Que nous prenions |
| Que tu prennes | Que vous preniez  |
| Qu'il prenne   | Qu'ils prennent.  |

Imperfect.



Imperfect. (That I might take)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Que je prisse  
Que tu prisses  
Qu'il prît

Que nous prissions  
Que vous prissiez  
Qu'ils prissent.

*Gerund.*

En prenant | taking

*Participle.*

Pris

| taken.

Resoudre | To resolve.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I resolve)

Je resouds  
Tu resouds  
Il resoud

Nous resolvons  
Vous resolvez  
Ils resolvent.

Imperfect. (I resolved)

Je resolvois  
Tu resolvois  
Il resolvoit

Nous resolvions  
Vous resolviez  
Ils resolvoient.

Perfect Definite. (I did resolve)

Je resolus  
Tu resolus  
Il resolut

Nous resolumes  
Vous resolutes  
Ils resolurent.

IMPERA-

IMPERATIVE. (Resolve)

| SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.           |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Resouds       | Resolvons         |
| Qu'il resolve | Resolvez          |
|               | Qu'ils resolvent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may resolve)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je resolve  | Que nous resolvions |
| Que tu resolves | Que vous resolviez  |
| Qu'il resolve   | Qu'ils resolvent.   |

Imperfect. (That I might resolve)

|                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Que je resolusse  | Que nous resolussions |
| Que tu resolusses | Que vous resolussiez  |
| Qu'il resolût     | Qu'ils resolussent.   |

|                    |              |           |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En resolvant | resolving |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Resolu       | resolved. |

Rire | To laugh.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I laugh)

|         |            |
|---------|------------|
| Je rie  | Nous rions |
| Tu ries | Vous riez  |
| Il rie  | Ils rient. |

IMPERA-

IMPERATIVE. (Laugh)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|---------------|
| Ries      | Rions         |
| Qu'il rie | Riez          |
|           | Qu'ils rient. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may laugh)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Que je rie  | Que nous riions |
| Que tu ries | Que vous riez   |
| Qu'il rie   | Qu'ils rient.   |

|             |          |          |
|-------------|----------|----------|
| Gerund.     | En riant | laughing |
| Participle. | Ri       | laughed. |

Suffire | To suffice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I suffice)

|           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je suffis | Nous suffisons |
| Tu suffis | Vous suffisez  |
| Il suffit | Ils suffisent. |

Imperfect. (I sufficed)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Je suffisois | Nous suffissions |
| Tu suffisois | Vous suffisiez   |
| Il suffisoit | Ils suffisoient. |

Perfect

Perfect Definite. (I did suffice)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.        |
|-----------|----------------|
| Je suffis | Nous suffimes  |
| Tu suffis | Vous suffites  |
| Il suffit | Ils suffirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Suffice)

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| Suffis        | Suffisons       |
| Qu'il suffise | Suffisez        |
|               | Qu'ils fussent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

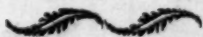
Present. (That I may suffice)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je suffise   | Que nous suffissions |
| Que tu suffisses | Que vous suffissiez  |
| Qu'il suffise    | Qu'ils fussent.      |

Imperfect. (That I might suffice)

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Que je fussisse  | Que nous fussissions |
| Que tu fussisses | Que vous fussissiez  |
| Qu'il fût        | Qu'ils fussissent.   |

|             |              |           |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|
| Gerund.     | En suffisant | sufficing |
| Participle. | Suffi        | sufficed. |





Suivre | To follow.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I follow)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.      |
|-----------|--------------|
| Je suis   | Nous suivons |
| Tu suis   | Vous suivez  |
| Il suit   | Ils suivent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Follow)

|             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| —           | Suivons         |
| Suis        | Suivez          |
| Qu'il suive | Qu'ils suivent. |

CONJUNCTIVE Mood.

Present. (That I may follow)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Que je suive  | Que nous suivions |
| Que tu suives | Que vous suiviez  |
| Qu'il suive   | Qu'ils suivent.   |

|                    |            |           |
|--------------------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     | En suivant | following |
| <i>Participle.</i> | Suivi      | followed. |

Se taire | To be silent.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I am silent)

|            |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| Je me tais | Nous nous taisons |
| Tu te tais | Vous vous taisez  |
| Il se tait | Ils se taisent.   |

Imperfect. (I was silent)

| SINGULAR.     | PLURAL.            |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Je me taisois | Nous nous taisions |
| Tu te taisois | Vous vous taisiez  |
| Il se taisoit | Ils se taisoient.  |

Perfect Definite. (I was silent)

|           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| Je me tus | Nous nous tumes |
| Tu te tus | Vous vous tutes |
| Il se tut | Ils se turent.  |

IMPERATIVE. (Be silent)

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Tais-toi       | Taisons-nous       |
| Qu'il se taife | Taisez-vous        |
|                | Qu'ils se taisent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may be silent)

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Que je me taife  | Que nous nous taisions |
| Que tu te taifes | Que vous vous taisiez  |
| Qu'il se taife   | Qu'ils se taisent.     |

Imperfect. (That I might be silent)

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Que je me tusse  | Que nous nous tussions |
| Que tu te tusses | Que vous vous tussiez  |
| Qu'il se tût     | Qu'ils se tussent.     |

|             |               |              |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| Gerund.     | En se taisant | being silent |
| Participle. | Tu            | been silent. |

Vaincre

Vaincre | To vanquish.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I vanquish)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|          |                |
|----------|----------------|
| Je vains | Nous vainquons |
| Tu vains | Vous vainquez  |
| Il vainc | Ils vainquent. |

Imperfect. (I vanquished)

|              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| Je vainquois | Nous vainquions  |
| Tu vainquois | Vous vainquiez   |
| Il vainquoit | Ils vainquaient. |

Perfect Definite. (I did vanquish)

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| Je vainquis | Nous vainquîmes  |
| Tu vainquis | Vous vainquîtes  |
| Il vainquit | Ils vainquirent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Vanquish)

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| ———           | Vainquons         |
| Vains         | Vainquez          |
| Qu'il vainque | Qu'ils vainquent. |

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may vanquish)

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Que je vainque  | Que nous vainquions |
| Que tu vainques | Que vous vainquiez  |
| Qu'il vainque   | Qu'ils vainquent.   |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. (That I might vanquish)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                    |  |                        |
|--------------------|--|------------------------|
| Que je vainquisse  |  | Que nous vainquissions |
| Que tu vainquisses |  | Que vous vainquissiez  |
| Qu'il vainquît     |  | Qu'ils vainquissent.   |

|                    |  |             |  |             |
|--------------------|--|-------------|--|-------------|
| <i>Gerund.</i>     |  | En vaincant |  | vanquishing |
| <i>Participle.</i> |  | Vaincu      |  | vanquished. |

Vivre | To live.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I live)

|        |  |             |
|--------|--|-------------|
| Je vis |  | Nous vivons |
| Tu vis |  | Vous vivez  |
| Il vit |  | Ils vivent. |

Perfect Definite. (I lived)

|          |  |               |
|----------|--|---------------|
| Je vecus |  | Nous vecumes  |
| Tu vecus |  | Vous vecutes  |
| Il vecut |  | Ils vecurent. |

IMPERATIVE. (Live)

|            |  |                |
|------------|--|----------------|
| Vis        |  | Vivons         |
| Qu'il vive |  | Vivez          |
|            |  | Qu'ils vivent. |

Q

CONJUNC-



## CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (That I may live)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Que je vive

Que nous vivions

Que tu vives

Que vous viviez

Qu'il vive

Qu'ils vivent.

Imperfect. (That I might live)

Que je vecusse

Que nous vecussions

Que tu vecusses

Que vous vecussiez

Qu'il vecût

Qu'ils vecussent.

*Gerund.*

En vivant

living

*Participle.*

Vecu

lived.

Besides, there are in French a great many more Irregular Verbs in each of the four Conjugations and endings, which we think proper to omit, because they are either compounded of, or derived from, those which we have conjugated before, and are no more irregular than their simple or radical verbs.

Thus

Thus the compound or derivative  
Verbs for instance;

|           |              |                                               |          |
|-----------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Renvoyer  | to send back | Are to be conjugated like the Irregular Verbs | Envoyer  |
| Decouvrir | to discover  |                                               | Couvrir  |
| Conquerir | to conquer   |                                               | Acquerir |
| Devenir   | to become    |                                               | Venir    |
| Contenir  | to contain   |                                               | Tenir    |
| Prevoir   | to foresee   |                                               | Voir     |
| Aboudre   | to abolve    |                                               | Resoudre |
| Defaire   | to undo      |                                               | Faire    |
| Souscrire | to subscribe |                                               | Ecrire   |
| Traduire  | to translate |                                               | Conduire |
| Promettre | to promise   |                                               | Mettre   |
| Deplaie   | to displease |                                               | Plaire   |
| Apprendre | to learn     |                                               | Prendre  |





## CHAP. V.

### *Of the PARTICIPLE.*

**T**HE Participle joined with any Tense of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être* takes in French, as in English, the same signification and government of the verb from which it derives, as we have seen in the conjugation of regular verbs.

There are in French three sorts of Participles, viz. Active, Passive, and Absolute.

A Participle is active when it is joined with any single Tense of the Auxiliary *avoir*, which is used only in active sentences:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il a épousé une veuve |  | He has married a very |
| bien riche            |  | rich widow.           |

A Participle is passive when it is joined with any Tense whatever of the Auxiliary

liary

liary *être*, which is always used in passive sentences:

|                     |  |                     |
|---------------------|--|---------------------|
| J' étois recommandé |  | I was recommended   |
| par plusieurs amis  |  | by several friends. |

The Participle Absolute is compounded of one of the Gerunds of the Auxiliaries, viz. *ayant* or *étant*, and the Participle either active or passive of a regular or irregular verb:

|                      |  |                       |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ayant ainsi parlé    |  | having thus spoken    |
| Le sermon étant fini |  | the sermon being over |

Participles, in English, whether they be used in an active or passive voice, are never declinable, and therefore do not agree with the subject, nor with the object of any verb whatever.

But the French Participles, when forming the compound Tenses of verbs, are sometimes declinable, and at other times indeclinable.

When they are used in an active voice, and consequently joined to any single Tense of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, they are



generally indeclinable, and therefore agree neither with the Nominative going immediately before the verb *avoir*, nor with the Accusative following immediately the Participle.

Thus a man as well as a woman says,  
 J' ai ouvert le livre, | I have opened the  
                   *or la porte*                   | book, *or the door*;

And two women as well as two men say,  
 Nous avons ouvert les | We have opened the  
                   *livres, or les portes* | books, *or the doors*.

However, when an active verb is preceded in the compound Tenses by any of these relative Pronouns,

Le | la | les | que,

or by any of these Pronouns Conjunctive,

Me | te | nous | vous,

the Participle Active then must agree in gender and number with the Noun Substantive, to which the Relative Pronoun refers, or which the Conjunctive represents.

Thus,

Thus, in speaking of a book, I say,

|                  |   |                   |
|------------------|---|-------------------|
| Je l'ai ouvert,  | } | I have opened it: |
| <i>of a door</i> |   |                   |
| Je l'ai ouverte  |   |                   |

And in speaking of many books, we say,

|                          |   |                         |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| Nous les avons ouverts,  | } | we have opened<br>them. |
| <i>and of many doors</i> |   |                         |
| Nous les avons ouvertes  |   |                         |

|                     |  |                     |
|---------------------|--|---------------------|
| Fermez le livre que |  | Shut the book which |
| vous avez ouvert    |  |                     |
| Fermez la porte que |  | Shut the door which |
| vous avez ouverte   |  |                     |

Nay, a man speaking to another, says,  
 Vous m'avez trompé | you have deceived me;  
 and a woman must say,

Vous m'avez trompée | you have deceived me.

Many men speaking of another person, either Masculine or Feminine, properly say,

|                                |  |                               |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Il <i>or</i> elle nous a trom- |  | he <i>or</i> she has deceived |
| pés                            |  |                               |

and many women,

|                                |  |                               |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Il <i>or</i> elle nous a trom- |  | he <i>or</i> she has deceived |
| pées                           |  |                               |

Participles

Participles used, in French, in a passive voice, and consequently joined to any tense whatever of the auxiliary verb *être*, are always declinable, and have therefore four variations, because they must agree in gender and number with the Noun Substantive, or Pronoun Personal in the Nominative Case, going immediately before the verb:

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Il sera nommé par le     | He will be named by    |
| Conseil et élu par       | the Council and        |
| le Roi                   | chosen by the King     |
| Elle a été volée et tuée | She has been robbed    |
| par un voleur            | and killed by a thief. |

As we make use in French of the assistance of the verb *être* in the compound Tenses of some neuter verbs, and of all the reflected verbs, the Participle of such verbs is also to agree in gender and number with the Noun or Pronoun which is the subject of the verb.

Thus

Thus a man says, for instance;

|                          |   |                            |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Je m'étois flaté que Je  | } | I flattered myself that    |
| ne serois pas oublié,    |   |                            |
| <i>and a woman,</i>      |   |                            |
| Je m'étois flatée que je |   |                            |
| ne serois pas oubliée,   |   | I should not be forgotten. |

Moreover, the Participle in the passive voice is frequently used in both languages, as a mere Adjective affirming something of a subject, and qualifying the Noun Substantive, to which it is joined. In this case likewise the Participle must agree with its Noun Substantive in gender and number:

|                        |  |                        |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Un livre bien écrit    |  | a well-written book    |
| Une lettre bien écrite |  | a well-written letter. |







## CHAP. VI.

### *Of the* ADVERB.

**T**HE genuine use of Adverbs, which are commonly joined to Verbs, and sometimes to Adjectives, Participles, and other Adverbs, is to denote the different qualities and circumstances of the action expressed by the verb; as,

|                                         |  |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| Ce garçon parle toujours tout doucement |  | This boy talks always very slowly |
| Cette fille ne lit jamais tout haut     |  | That girl never reads aloud.      |

And, as circumstances are of different nature, there are, both in French and English, different sorts of Adverbs, viz.

|                       |  |                   |
|-----------------------|--|-------------------|
| Of time               |  | Of affirmation    |
| Of quantity or number |  | Of negation       |
| Of place              |  | Of comparison     |
| Of quality or manner  |  | Of doubt          |
| Of order              |  | Of interrogation. |

ADVERBS

ADVERBS *of* TIME.

|           |             |            |            |
|-----------|-------------|------------|------------|
| Toujours  | always      | Trop vite  | too fast   |
| Jamais    | never       | Depuis     | since      |
| A jamais  | for ever    | Depuis peu | of late    |
| Souvent   | often       | A present  | at present |
| Rarement  | seldom      | Tantôt     | presently  |
| Autrefois | formerly    | Deformais  | hereafter  |
| Tôt       | soon        | Quand      | when       |
| Aussitôt  | so soon     | Alors      | then       |
| Bientôt   | very soon   | Hier       | yesterday  |
| Plutôt    | sooner      | Jusqu'ici  | hitherto   |
| Au plutôt | the soonest | Encore     | yet        |
| Tard      | late        | Pas encore | not yet    |
| Bien tard | very late   | A tems     | in time    |
| Plus tard | later       | De jour    | by day     |
| Vite      | quick, fast | De nuit    | by night   |
| Plus vite | faster      | A midi     | at noon    |
| Vitement  | quickly     | A loisir   | at leisure |
| Trop tôt  | too soon    | A propos   | A propos   |
| Trop tard | too late    | A la hâte  | in haste   |

|               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| Quelquefois   | sometimes   |
| Tout de suite | directly    |
| Tout-a-coup   | on a sudden |
| Subitement    | suddenly    |
| Sur le champ  | on the spot |
| Au plus tard  | the latest  |

Maintenant

|                     |   |                 |
|---------------------|---|-----------------|
| Maintenant          | } | now             |
| A cette heure       |   |                 |
| Tout à l'heure      |   | by and by       |
| Auparavant          |   | before          |
| A l'avenir          |   | for the future  |
| A toute heure       |   | at any time     |
| Aujourd' hui        |   | to-day          |
| Demain              |   | to-morrow       |
| Ce soir             |   | this evening    |
| Ce matin            |   | this morning    |
| De nouveau          |   | again           |
| Jour et nuit        |   | day and night   |
| A minuit            |   | at midnight     |
| Sur le midi         |   | about noon      |
| Precisement         |   | just            |
| Dés lors            |   | from that time  |
| A l' ordinaire      |   | as usual        |
| D'abord             |   | first, at first |
| Tant de fois        |   | so many times   |
| Le lendemain        |   | the next day    |
| Le mois dernier     |   | last month      |
| Soudainement        |   | suddenly        |
| Tous les jours      |   | every day       |
| Tous les ans        |   | every year      |
| Toutes les semaines |   | every week      |
| La nuit passée      |   | last night      |
| Journellement       |   | daily           |
| En tout tems        |   | at all times    |

Tout

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Tout d'un coup      | all at once           |
| Frequemment         | frequently            |
| Avant midi          | before noon           |
| Après midi          | after noon            |
| De bonne heure      | early                 |
| Le mois prochain    | next month            |
| Tous les deux jours | every other day       |
| Tous les mois       | every month           |
| L'après diner       | the afternoon         |
| Dans la matinée     | in the forenoon       |
| Dans la soirée      | in the evening        |
| Demain au matin     | to-morrow morning     |
| Demain au soir      | to-morrow night       |
| Avant hier          | before yesterday      |
| Après demain        | after to-morrow       |
| Hier au matin       | yesterday morning     |
| Hier au soir        | yesterday evening     |
| Le furlendemain     | two days after        |
| En meme tems        | at the same time      |
| Bien long tems      | a very long while     |
| De tems en tems     | from time to time     |
| Tantôt....et tantôt | now and then          |
| Au plus vite        | with all speed        |
| Au plutôt possible  | as soon as possible   |
| Dans peu de tems    | within a little while |
| Pour toujours       | for ever and ever     |
| Presque toujours    | almost always         |
| Presque jamais      | hardly ever           |

Plusieurs



|                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Plusieurs fois                   | several times        |
| Bien des fois                    | a great many times   |
| Anciennement                     | anciently            |
| Nouvellement                     | newly                |
| Dernierement                     | lately               |
| Dorenavant                       | henceforth           |
| Communement                      | commonly             |
| Continuellement                  | continually          |
| Incessamment }<br>Sans cesse }   | without ceasing      |
| En attendant                     | in the mean while    |
| Ordinairement }<br>D'ordinaire } | usually              |
| Le plus souvent                  | mostly, most times   |
| Sur le soir                      | towards evening      |
| Il y a huit jours                | a week ago           |
| Il y a quinze jours              | a fortnight ago      |
| Il y a quelque tems              | sometime ago         |
| Il y a long tems                 | a long while ago     |
| Il n' y a pas long tems          | not a long while ago |
| Jusqu' à present                 | till now             |
| Plus que jamais                  | more than ever       |
| Depuis ce tems là                | ever since.          |

*ADVERBS of Quantity and Number.*

|      |             |           |          |
|------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| Peu  | little, few | Combien { | how much |
| Trop | too much    |           | how many |
|      |             |           | Un       |

|          |                    |            |            |
|----------|--------------------|------------|------------|
| Un peu   | { some<br>a little | Environ    | about      |
| Affez    | enough             | Cher       | dear       |
| Tant     | so much            | Cherement  | dearly     |
| Autant   | { as much          | Une fois   | once       |
|          | { as....as         | Trois fois | thrice     |
| Beaucoup | { much             | Davantage  | more       |
|          | { many             | A demi     | by half    |
| De plus  | moreover           | Presque    | almost     |
| Gueres   | but little         | Deux fois  | twice      |
| Trop peu | too little         | Dix fois   | ten times  |
|          |                    | Infiniment | infinitely |

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Tant soit peu   | never so little         |
| A peu près      | pretty near, near about |
| Tout au plus    | at most                 |
| A bon marché    | cheap                   |
| Tout-à-fait     | quite, altogether       |
| Pas beaucoup    | not much, not many      |
| Suffisamment    | sufficiently            |
| Peu à peu       | little by little        |
| Au moins        | } at least -            |
| Du moins        |                         |
| Pour le moins   |                         |
| Abondamment     | plentifully             |
| Entierement     | entirely, wholly        |
| Combien de fois | { how many times        |
|                 | { how often.            |

ADVERBS *of* PLACE.

|              |                 |            |              |
|--------------|-----------------|------------|--------------|
| Loin         | far             | Dehors     | out          |
| Prés         | near            | En dehors  | without      |
| Ici          | { here          | Jusqu' où  | how far      |
|              | { hither        | A coté     | by           |
| Là }         | { there         | Au dessus  | upon         |
| Y }          | { thither       | Au dessous | under        |
| Plus loin    | further         | De coté    | afide        |
| Où           | { where         | Devant     | before       |
|              | { whither       | Derrière   | behind       |
| Par ici      | this way        | En avant   | forwards     |
| Par là       | that way        | En arrière | backwards    |
| Là haut      | above           | Nulle part | no where     |
| Là dessus    | here above      | Ailleurs   | elsewhere    |
| A bas        | down            | Autre part | else         |
| Là bas       | below           | De ça      | on this side |
| Ici dessus   | here above      | De là      | on that side |
| Dedans       | within          | Tout droit | straight     |
| De plus prés | nearer          |            |              |
| ça et là     | here and there  |            |              |
| D' où        | from whence     |            |              |
| Par où       | { which way     |            |              |
|              | { through where |            |              |
| De là        | from thence     |            |              |
| D'ici        | { from hence    |            |              |
|              | { from here     |            |              |

|                         |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ici deffous             | { under here<br>here below           |
| A l'entour              | } round about                        |
| Tout au tour            |                                      |
| Tout près d'ici         | just by                              |
| Jusqu'ici               | down to here                         |
| Jusque là               | { down to there, or<br>so far        |
| Aux environs            | there about                          |
| Quelque part            | any where                            |
| En aucun endroit        | in no place                          |
| En haut                 | upwards, up                          |
| Par tout                | every where                          |
| Vis-à-vis               | over-against                         |
| En bas                  | { down<br>downwards<br>on the ground |
| De coté et d'autre      | } on both sides                      |
| De part et d'autre      |                                      |
| De deux cotés           | } on the right                       |
| A la droite             |                                      |
| A la gauche             | on the left                          |
| De tout coté            | } on every side                      |
| De toute part           |                                      |
| Au de dans et au        | } at home and abroad                 |
| dehors                  |                                      |
| Dans les pays étrangers | abroad                               |



ADVERBS of *Quality and Manner.*

|            |             |            |             |
|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| Bien       | well, right | A pied     | on foot     |
| Mal        | ill, wrong  | A couvert  | secure      |
| Sagement   | wisely      | Exprès     | on purpose  |
| Justement  | justly      | A dessein  | purposely   |
| Joliment   | prettily    | En étourdi | heedlessly  |
| Civilement | civilly     | Sotement   | foolishly   |
| Vivement   | briskly     | A la mode  | fashionably |
| De bon gré | willingly   | Par hazard | by chance   |
| A tort     | wrongfully  | D'accord   | agreed      |
| Au hazard  | at random   | A regret   | grudgingly  |
| En ami     | friendly    | Par degrés | by degrees  |

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| Fort bien     | very well, very right |
| Fort mal      | very ill, very wrong  |
| A l'aïse      | at ease, comfortably  |
| Galamment     | cleverly              |
| Constamment   | constantly            |
| Doucement     | gently, slowly        |
| De bon coeur  | heartily              |
| A la renverse | upon one's back       |
| De bon droit  | rightly               |
| A la rigueur  | strictly              |
| A l'envie     | with emulation        |
| De sang froid | in cool blood         |
| A cheval      | on horse-back         |

A l'amiable

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| A l'amiable      | amicably                 |
| A peine          | hardly, scarce, scarcely |
| A decouvert      | openly                   |
| De bon sens      | the right way            |
| Du mauvais sens  | the wrong way            |
| Serieusement     | seriously                |
| En badinant      | in jest                  |
| Etourdiment      | giddily                  |
| Passablement     | tolerably                |
| Mediocrement     | indifferently            |
| Admirablement    | admirably                |
| Merveilleusement | wonderfully              |
| A merveille      | admirably well           |
| Ni bien ni mal   | neither right nor wrong  |
| Par malice       | mischievously            |
| Tout de bon      | in good earnest          |
| Temerairement    | rashly                   |
| Brusquement      | bluntly                  |
| Grossierement    | rudely                   |
| Par meprise      | through mistake          |
| Negligemment     | negligently              |
| Totalement       | thoroughly               |
| A contre-cœur    | unwillingly              |
| De bonne foi     | sincerely                |
| A tout égard     | in every respect         |
| Paifiblement     | peaceably                |
| Soigneusement    | carefully                |
| Tranquillement   | quietly                  |

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| Sans façon | without ceremony |
| Exactement | accurately       |

ADVERBS *of* ORDER.

|                   |          |                     |            |
|-------------------|----------|---------------------|------------|
| Avant             | before   | Après               | after      |
| Ensemble          | together | Enfin               | in short   |
| De front          | abreast  | A la fois           | at once    |
| A la fin          | at last  | En foule            | in a crowd |
| Finalement        | lastly   | Voici               | here is    |
| Tour à tour       |          | by turns            |            |
| A la ronde        |          | round about         |            |
| Premièrement      |          | firstly, first      |            |
| Secondement       | }        | secondly            |            |
| Deuxièmement      |          |                     |            |
| Troisièmement     |          | thirdly             |            |
| En premier lieu   |          | in the first place  |            |
| En second lieu    |          | in the second place |            |
| En troisième lieu |          | in the third place  |            |
| Ensuite           |          | in the next place   |            |
| Pareillement      |          | likewise            |            |

ADVERBS *of* AFFIRMATION.

|             |          |          |              |
|-------------|----------|----------|--------------|
| Oui         | yes      |          |              |
| A la vérité | } indeed | Surement | { sure       |
| En vérité   |          |          | { assuredly  |
|             |          |          | { to be sure |
|             |          |          | Vraiment     |

|                 |   |                    |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| Vraiment        | } | truly              |
| Veritablement   |   |                    |
| Certainement    |   | certainly          |
| Indubitablement |   | undoubtedly        |
| Sans doute      |   | without doubt      |
| Volontiers      |   | readily, willingly |
| Absolument      |   | by all means       |
| Sans faute      |   | without fail       |
| Immanquablement | } | infallibly         |
| Infaliblement   |   |                    |
| Sur ma parole   |   | upon my word       |
| Sur mon honneur |   | upon my honour     |

ADVERBS *of* NEGATION.

|                  |   |                                  |
|------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| Non, ne          | } | no, not                          |
| Ne...pas         |   | no, none                         |
| Ne...point       |   |                                  |
| Non pas          |   | not at all                       |
| Point de tout    |   | nothing at all                   |
| Rien de tout     |   |                                  |
| Nullement        | } | by no means                      |
| Aucunement       |   |                                  |
| En nulle maniere |   | { in no ways<br>not in the least |



ADVERBS *of* COMPARISON.

|                         |        |           |                        |
|-------------------------|--------|-----------|------------------------|
| Plus                    | more   | De même   | so                     |
| Moins                   | less   | En partie | partly                 |
| Mieux                   | better | Autrement | otherwise              |
| Ainsi                   | thus   | Sur tout  | above all              |
| Pis, <i>or</i> plus mal |        |           | worse                  |
| Comme cela              |        |           | like this              |
| Tout autant             |        |           | as much, exactly so    |
| Tout à la fois          |        |           | all together           |
| Après tout              |        |           | upon the whole         |
| Au contraire            |        |           | on the contrary        |
| En particulier          |        |           | especially, in private |
| Particulièrement        |        |           | particularly           |
| Principalement          |        |           | chiefly                |

---

ADVERBS *of* DOUBT.

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Peut-être         | perhaps, it may be |
| Probablement      | probably           |
| Apparemment       | in all appearance  |
| Vraisemblablement | very likely        |

---

ADVERBS *of* INTERROGATION.

|          |      |
|----------|------|
| Quand    | when |
| Pourquoi | why  |

Combien

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Combien         | how much, how many |
| Combien de fois | { how often        |
|                 | { how many times   |
| Comment         | how                |

When Adverbs meet with Verbs in the same sentence, they are commonly put after them, if the Tense be simple;

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Il parle trop        | he talks too much     |
| Elle danse fort bien | she dances very well; |

and between the Tense of the Auxiliary Verb and the Participle, if the Tense be compound;

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| J'ai assez mangé | I have eaten enough. |
| Il est bien logé | he is well lodged.   |

When Adverbs are as qualifiers of Adjectives, they immediately precede them:

|                                           |                                         |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Il est bien riche et extrêmement généreux | he is very rich, and extremely generous |
| Elle est assez jolie, mais trop fière     | she is pretty enough, but too proud.    |

Generally speaking, one can make as many Adverbs, in French, as there are Adjectives, by adding the termination  
*ment*

*ment* to the Adjective; but with this previous distinction, that in Adjectives ending in *e* mute, in *é* marked over with an acute accent, in *i*, or in *u*, it is to the masculine gender that the syllable *ment* is subjoined, but to the feminine of those ending with a consonant it is added.

Thus from the Masculine Adjectives:

|        |          |                                                                                         |            |            |
|--------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| Sage   | wise     | $\left. \begin{array}{c} \text{Are formed the} \\ \text{Adverbs.} \end{array} \right\}$ | Sagement   | wisely     |
| Aisé   | easy     |                                                                                         | Aisement   | easily     |
| Hardi  | bold     |                                                                                         | Hardiment  | boldly     |
| Absolu | absolute |                                                                                         | Absolument | absolutely |

and from the Feminine Adjectives:

|        |        |                                                                                           |            |          |
|--------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------|
| Seule  | only   | $\left. \begin{array}{c} \text{Are formed the Ad-} \\ \text{verbs.} \end{array} \right\}$ | Seulement  | only     |
| Claire | clear  |                                                                                           | Clairement | clearly  |
| Propre | proper |                                                                                           | Proprement | properly |
| Chère  | dear   |                                                                                           | Chèrement  | dearly   |
| Vive   | quick  |                                                                                           | Vivement   | quickly. |

When Adjectives end in *ant*, or in *ent*, Adverbs are formed by changing the terminations *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *emment*, pronounced alike.

Thus

Thus from the Masculine Adjectives,

|          |          |
|----------|----------|
| Constant | constant |
| Puissant | powerful |
| Prudent  | prudent  |
| Innocent | innocent |

are formed the Adverbs

|             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| Constamment | constantly |
| Puissamment | powerfully |
| Prudemment  | prudently  |
| Innocemment | innocently |







## CH A P. VII.

### *Of the* PREPOSITION.

**A** Preposition expresses, in both languages, the relation or reference a word has to another in the sentence; therefore a Preposition is always put before Nouns, and sometimes before Verbs, without which it cannot have a complete sense; as for instance,

|                                                                                                       |  |                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Elle demeure chez son<br>pere, près du mar-<br>ché, à coté d'une<br>Eglise, et vis-à-vis<br>un jardin |  | She lives at her father's<br>near the market, by<br>a church, and op-<br>posite a garden. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Some Prepositions govern, in French, the accusative, and others the genitive.

These govern the Accusative:

|       |        |          |        |
|-------|--------|----------|--------|
| Avec  | with   | Devant   | before |
| Pour  | for    | Derriere | behind |
| Avant | before | Par      | by     |
| Après | after  | Durant   | during |
| Sur   | upon   | Pendant  | for    |
|       |        |          | Entre  |

|             |             |         |           |
|-------------|-------------|---------|-----------|
| Entre       | between     | Vers    | } towards |
| Touchant    | concerning  | Envers  |           |
| Malgré      | in spite    | Comme   | as, like  |
| Vis-à-vis   | opposite    | Contre  | { against |
| Par dessus  | above       |         | { by      |
| Par dessous | under       | Outre   | besides   |
| Attendu     | considering | Excepté | } except  |
| Vu          | seeing      | Hormis  |           |
| Depuis      | since, from | Dedans  | within    |
| Dans, en    | in, into    | Chez    | at, to    |
| Parmi       | among       | Sans    | without   |
| Environ     | about       | Sous    | under.    |

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| Concernant     | about            |
| Moyennant      | by means         |
| Non obstant    | notwithstanding. |
| Selon, suivant | according to.    |

These Prepositions govern the Genitive:

|            |             |            |              |
|------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| Près de    | near        | A l'abri   | secure       |
| Auprès de  | by          | Au de ça   | on this side |
| Proche de  | near        | Au dessus  | above        |
| Faute de   | for want of | Au dessous | below        |
| Hors de    | out of      | Au devant  | before       |
| Le long de | along       | Au tour    | about        |
| Ensuite de | after       | A raison   | at the rate  |
| A cause    | because     | Au moyen   | in virtue    |
| A couvert  | sheltered   | A coté     | by, near     |

|           |              |            |         |
|-----------|--------------|------------|---------|
| En depit  | in spite     | Au lieu    | instead |
| Au milieu | in the midst | Au travers | through |

|               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Loin de       | at a distance from |
| A l'égard de  | as to the          |
| A l'exception | excepting          |
| A la reserve  | excepting          |
| Au derriere   | behind             |
| Aux environs  | round about        |
| A l'exclusion | excepting          |
| A la mode     | after the manner.  |

These three Prepositions,

|              |  |                |  |          |
|--------------|--|----------------|--|----------|
| Jusque       |  | Par rapport    |  | Quant    |
| (till or to) |  | (with respect) |  | (as for) |

only govern the Dative case.





## CHAP. VIII.

### *Of the CONJUNCTION.*

**A** Conjunction in French, as in English, serves to connect and join together words with words, and likewise phrases with phrases in a sentence, and shews the manner of depending upon one another; as for instance,

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ce que vous dites est |  | What you say is true, |
| vrai; car je l'ai vu  |  | for I have seen it    |
| de mes yeux           |  | with my own eyes.     |

I cannot avoid observing here, that most Conjunctions are Adverbs or Prepositions, attended by the Particle *que*, or by the Preposition *de*; therefore many of the same words are Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, according to the different relations which they have to the other parts of speech that they are joined to.

Conjunctions, in French, are divided in several sorts, namely,



## Copulative and Comparative; such as,

|            |         |           |          |
|------------|---------|-----------|----------|
| Et         | and     | Ainsî que | as also  |
| Comme si   | as if   | Non plus  | neither  |
| Outre cela | besides | De plus   | moreover |
| Comme      | as      | Savoir    | to wit;  |
| Aussi que  | as...as | Voila     | behold.  |

|                    |   |   |                          |
|--------------------|---|---|--------------------------|
| De sorte que       | } |   | so that, in so much that |
| Tellement que      |   |   |                          |
| De même que        |   |   | as just as               |
| Mais encore, aussi |   |   | but also                 |
| Au lieu que        |   |   | whereas                  |
| Aussi bien que     |   |   | as well as               |
| Non seulement      |   |   | not only                 |
| Tant que           |   | { | as much as               |
|                    |   | { | as many as               |

and *si* (so) in the sense of *aussi* (as)

Si savant que | so learned that.

## Disjunctive; such as,

|    |          |          |          |
|----|----------|----------|----------|
| Ni | {nor     | Soit que | whether  |
|    | {neither | Ou bien  | or else. |
| Ou | or       |          |          |

## Adversative; such as,

|                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Mais                | but              |
| Pourtant, toutefois | yet              |
| Quoique             | although, though |

|           |  |              |
|-----------|--|--------------|
| Neanmoins |  | nevertheless |
| Loin de   |  | far from     |
| Cependant |  | however.     |

Conditional; such as,

|                 |  |                |
|-----------------|--|----------------|
| Si              |  | if, whether    |
| A condition que |  | upon condition |
| A moins que     |  | unless         |
| Quand           |  | when           |
| Quand même      |  | if even        |
| Pourvu que      |  | provided       |
| Sans que        |  | without.       |

Declarative; such as,

|           |  |            |  |              |  |                 |
|-----------|--|------------|--|--------------|--|-----------------|
| Pour lors |  | then       |  | Savoir       |  | to wit          |
| Sur tout  |  | especially |  | C'est à dire |  | that is to say. |

Casual; such as,

|                   |  |                             |
|-------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Car               |  | for                         |
| A cause de        |  | on account that             |
| Attendu que       |  | seeing <i>or</i> being that |
| D'autant plus que |  | the more because            |
| A fin que         |  | that, to the end that       |
| A fin de          |  | in order to                 |
| Parceque          |  | because                     |
| Puisque           |  | since.                      |

Concluding; such as,

|       |  |         |  |           |  |           |
|-------|--|---------|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Donc  |  | then    |  | Ainsi     |  | thus      |
| Enfin |  | at last |  | Aussi     |  | so        |
| Or    |  | now     |  | Pour cela |  | therefore |

|                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| C'est pourquoi | therefore    |
| Par conséquent | consequently |
| A cet effet    | to that end. |

Transitive, or Continuative; such as,

|            |            |            |           |
|------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| En effet   | in effect  | En un mot  | in a word |
| Après cela | after that | D'ailleurs | besides   |
| Puis       | then       | Ensuite    | then      |
| Même       | even       | De même    | likewise  |
| Là dessus  | thereupon  | Sur quoi   | whereupon |

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Quoiqu'il en soit | however it may be |
| Dans la suite     | afterwards        |
| Au reste          | as for the rest.  |

And of Time; such as,

|                     |   |                |
|---------------------|---|----------------|
| Dès que             | } | as soon as     |
| Aussitôt que        |   |                |
| Toutes les fois que | } | whenever       |
| Jusqu'à ce que      |   |                |
| Depuis que          |   |                |
| Après que           | } | after          |
| Avant que           |   |                |
| Avant de            |   |                |
| Avant que de        | } | before         |
| Quand               |   |                |
| Lors que            | } | when           |
| Pendant que         |   |                |
| Tamdis que          | } | while, whilst. |
|                     |   |                |

CHAP.



## CHAP. IX.

### *Of the INTERJECTION.*

**A**N Interjection, so called, because it is thrown in between the parts of a sentence without making any alteration in it, is a compendious way of expressing a whole sentence in one or two words; and used only to represent the affection of the speaker, and the passions or emotions of his soul, that the shortness of the one might the sooner express the suddenness and quickness of the other.

Of Interjections there are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, as | Hah! ah! | ah! ah! ah!

which are used likewise for almost all the emotions of the mind, but differently according to the emotion which it expresses.



|                                            |                 |                 |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Of grief, as                               | { Helas! pitité | alas! blefs me! |
|                                            | { Ho! oh! oh!   | oh! oh! ho!     |
| Of pain, as                                | Ouf! ài! aye!   | dear me!        |
| Of wonder, as                              | { Bon Dieu!     | good God!       |
|                                            | { Mifericorde!  | mercy on me!    |
| Of praise, as                              | { Brave!        | bravo!          |
|                                            | { Bien fait!    | well done!      |
| Of furprife, as                            | Morbleu!        | forgad!         |
| Of averfion, as                            | Fi donc!        | fye upon it!    |
| Of affent, as                              | Bon! bon!       | well! right!    |
| Of diflike, as                             | Ouais!          | adod! pshaw!    |
| Of derifion, as                            | { Oh! oh! oh!   | ho! oh! oh!     |
|                                            | { Zeff!         | pfhaw!          |
| Of exclama-<br>tion, as                    | { Quoi! oh!     | what! oh!       |
|                                            | { Comment!      | how!            |
|                                            | { Parbleu!      | lack-a-day!     |
| Of warning, as                             | { Courage!      | courage!        |
|                                            | { Allons!       | come on!        |
|                                            | { Alerte!       | cheer up!       |
|                                            | { Garre!        | have a care!    |
| Of filencing, as                           | Paix! chut!     | hift! hufh!     |
| Of calling, as                             | Hola! allons!   | ho! fo ho!      |
| Of fhouting, as                            | Vive le Roi! }  | huzza!          |
|                                            | Vive la joie! } |                 |
| And of paffion<br>and impreca-<br>tion, as | { Par bleu!     | zounds!         |
|                                            | { Morbleu!      | odfo!           |
|                                            | { Pefte!        | plague!         |
|                                            | { Ma foi!       | faith!          |
|                                            | { Diable!       | forgad!         |



A NEW AND EASY  
FRENCH GRAMMAR:

---

PART II.

---

The FRENCH SYNTAX.

---

**S**YNTAX teaches the right and elegant placing and construing of words and phrases in sentences.

The Syntax, or construction of words; in the French language, is not confined to a few and easy observations as in the English, but is more extensive than in any other modern language; it therefore

contains a great many necessary and difficult rules, which we will explain as clearly as possible on each part of speech, with the same methodical order observed in teaching the French grounds.

---

*Remarks on the PRONUNCIATION.*

How difficult soever the French pronunciation may appear to an English learner, when compared to any other, the rules for the English pronunciation however are more numerous and difficult than those which have been given on the French, for this evident reason:—

Besides the five vowels, which always keep their natural sound in French, though each of them is pronounced variously in English, there are in both languages many Diphthongs; but most of the English have several sounds; as for instance in these five words,

Head

Head | heart | please | fear | bear.

The Diphthong *ea* has five different sounds, in the distinguishing of which a Foreigner must have a great deal of trouble; whereas in the French, on the contrary, the same sound is generally common to several Diphthongs: In these five words for instance,

Laine | reine | disoit | neigeoit | favoient.

The Diphthongs *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and the Triphthongs *eoi*, *oie*, are all to be pronounced like a French open *e*, which has the same sound with the Vowel *e* in the English word *bell*, according to the elementary rules, as one may plainly see by the following table, which we principally give here in order to recollect the true sounds of the French Diphthongs; which is the most important matter in the pronunciation.



*A TABLE of the Sounds of all French  
Diphthongs and Triphthongs.*

|                |     |         |  |  |  |
|----------------|-----|---------|--|--|--|
| The Diphthong  | ai  |         |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | ei  |         |  |  |  |
| The Triphthong | oie |         |  |  |  |
| The Triphthong | eo  | only in |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | oi  | verbs   |  |  |  |
| The Triphthong | eai |         |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | ai  | only in |  |  |  |
|                |     | verbs   |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | au  |         |  |  |  |
| The Triphthong | eau |         |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | oi  |         |  |  |  |
| The Triphthong | eo  |         |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | eu  |         |  |  |  |
| The Diphthong  | ou  |         |  |  |  |

Are to be Pronounced like

a French open  
è, or the *e* in  
bell

the *a* in face

the *o* in fo

an *o*, and the *e* in  
bell pronounced  
separately

the *u* in duft

the *u* in pull

Moreover, in the Diphthongs *ea* and  
*eo* the Vowel *e* serves only to soften the  
Vowels *a* and *o*. In the Triphthong  
*oeu* the Vowel *o* is dropt; and in the  
Diphthongs,

Ia | ie | io | oo | ui,

both

both Vowels are to be pronounced according to their natural sound.

And here we may take occasion to observe, that some modern French writers, particularly *De Voltaire*, have made use of the Diphthong *ai* instead of the Diphthong *oi* in the Preter-Imperfect of the Indicative Mood, and the Conditional Tense of all French verbs; as likewise in any other word, wherein the Diphthong *oi* must have the same sound with the Diphthong *ai*, that is, like the *e* in *bell*, more especially in the Infinitives, and most Tenses of the Verbs ending in *ôître*, such as *connoître*.

By the change of the Diphthong *oi* into the Diphthong *ai*, introduced by some modern authors, the rule of the pronunciation concerning the sound of the Diphthong *oi*, which is pronounced like an *o* and an open *e* separately one after another, as we have seen, should become quite general without the least exception.

Thus,

Thus, instead of spelling,

|                         |                                   |                  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| in the Imperfect,       | They have thought proper to write | (I spoke)        |
| Je parlois;             |                                   | Je parlais       |
| and in the Conditional, |                                   | (I should speak) |
| Je parlerois;           |                                   | Je parlerais     |
| in the Infinitive,      |                                   | (to know)        |
| Connoître;              |                                   | Connaitre        |
| in the Present,         |                                   | (I know)         |
| Je connois;             |                                   | Je connais       |
| in the Imperfect,       |                                   | (I knew)         |
| Je connoissois;         |                                   | Je connaissais   |
| in the Future,          |                                   | (I shall know)   |
| Je connaitrai;          |                                   | Je connaitrai    |
| and in the Conditional, |                                   | (I should know)  |
| Je connoitrois;         |                                   | Je connaitrais.  |

It is the same with the Triphthong *oie*, which they have changed into the Triphthong *aie* at the last syllable of the third Person Plural in the Preter-Imperfect of the Indicative, and in the Conditional Tense of all French verbs.

Thus, instead of spelling in the Imperfect of the Indicative,

Ilis

|                                                                                                    |                     |                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ils parloient<br>Ils marchoient;<br>and in the Conditional,<br>Ils parleroient<br>Ils marcheroient | } They have written | {<br>Ils parlaient<br>Ils marchaient<br><br>Ils parleraient<br>Ils marcheraient |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

But, as such a modern use, though well grounded, has not yet been universally admitted, the former manner of spelling is to be preferred, particularly by a Foreigner.

Of the Consonants no sound seems to be so difficult to an English learner as that of the letter *r* coming after the Vowels *e*, *i*, or *u*, at the end of French words.

This letter is pronounced in these two languages in so different a manner, that an English person speaking with the utmost propriety, and pronouncing exceedingly well in every other respect, is often distinguished from a Frenchman by the improper sound of that letter in many instances.

Scholars, therefore, are seldom able to pronounce rightly these five, and the like French words:



Plasir | amour | écrire | nature | severe;  
 in which they commonly lift the upper  
 lip, depress the lower, and force the  
 voice before pronouncing the Consonant  
*r*, as they must do in these and similar  
 English words:

Beer | there | poor | square | here | fire;  
 while the French pronounce the letter *r*  
 in the same tone of voice with the Vowel  
 that goes before it, without the least  
 motion of the mouth.

To remedy this too common fault, the  
 learner must pronounce the Consonant *r*  
 at the last syllable of French words just  
 as he does in the English word *lyre* (a  
 musical instrument); or else, suppose the  
 Consonant *t*, without pronouncing it,  
 after the letter *r*, as in *filbert*, thus

Plasirt | amourt | écriрте | naturte | severte.

And here I cannot avoid observing,  
 that English scholars too frequently mis-  
 take in the true sound of the letters *re*,  
 preceded

preceded by the Consonants *d* or *t*, to form the syllables *dre* or *tre*, and very often met with at the end of French words, which syllables they pronounce as if the Consonant *r* was written after the Vowel *e* (thus, *der* or *ter*); perhaps, because there are in English a great many words ending in *der* or in *ter*, and a very few in *dre* or in *tre*.

In short, the syllables *re* or *tre*, in French words, must always have the same sound with the last syllable of the English word *theatre*:

|        |  |            |  |        |  |         |
|--------|--|------------|--|--------|--|---------|
| Gendre |  | son-in-law |  | Pretre |  | priest  |
| Cendre |  | ashes      |  | Lettre |  | letter. |

---

### *Of the* ORTHOGRAPHY.

The French Orthography is indeed one of the most difficult with respect to the method of spelling syllables and words in writing. The reason of it is, that the very same sound is common to  
several

several French Diphthongs or Triphthongs, as we have hinted before.

Such a difficulty, therefore, can be only surmounted by great application and uninterrupted practice in reading and writing.

There are besides, both in French and English, several figures making a part of the Orthography, among which the accent, elision, and stops, only are worthy of observation.

---

#### *Of the ACCENT.*

The Accent is, in French, a note put chiefly over our Vowel *e* to denote its several sounds, as likewise over some words in order to distinguish their nature and signification.

There are three sorts of Accents, viz. Acute or close, Grave or open, and Circumflex.

The Acute Accent is put over the *e*, which our grammarians have been pleased to call *é* masculine, as in *prémédité*.

The Accent Grave is used over the è called open, as in the last syllable of words ending in ès:

Après | succès | excès | auprès;  
and in these and similar monosyllables,  
à | très | où | là | ça | dès | près.

The Accent Circumflex is used over a syllable in French words which have now lost a vowel, or an s of its old spelling, and the Circumflex makes that syllable long; as for instance,

âge | bête | être | vôtre | vû,  
which were formerly spelt,  
Aage | beste | estre | vostre | veu.

The last syllable of the Third Person Singular of the Preter-Imperfect of the Conjunctive Mood, is also marked over with a Circumflex Accent, to distinguish it from the same person of the Perfect Definite of the Indicative:

|           |             |                 |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| Qu'il eût | Qu'il aimât | Qu'il reçût     |
| Qu'il fût | Qu'il punît | Qu'il répondît; |

from



from the end of which words an *e* has been cut off; but these syllables are not pronounced long.

Some other words take likewise the Circumflex Accent to prevent one's mistaking their signification, as *dû* (owed) from *devoir*, to distinguish it from *du* (of the), and *crû* (increased) from *croître*, to distinguish it from *cru* (believed) from *croire*.

A perpendicular Accent has, moreover, been introduced for some years, to make the intermediate *è*, which has a middle sound, between the acute and grave:

Règle | fidele | fleche | tonnère.

Nouns ending with a double *e*, require an Acute Accent over the first *é*:

Fumée | cheminée | armée | rosée.

---

#### *Of the ELISION.*

An Elision is the cutting off of a final Vowel before a word beginning with a Vowel

Vowel or *b* mute, and the Vowel thus cut off is supplied by a comma, called apostrophe, and set above the empty place thus, (l' Orateur) instead of (le Orateur.)

Elision is used in French in all monosyllables; as,

Me, te, se, le, la, que, je, ne, ce, de,  
followed by a Vowel; and in all the Conjunctions ending with the Participle *que*; as,

Jusque | presque | puisque | parceque.

---

### *Of the Stops.*

Stops are of six sorts, whose names and shapes are thus, (, ; : . ? !)

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Une virgule              | a comma                 |
| Un point et une virgule  | a semicolon             |
| Deux points              | a colon                 |
| Un point                 | a full stop             |
| Un point d'interrogation | a note of interrogation |
| Un point d'admiration    | a note of admiration.   |

The

The use of the Stops, which the French call punctuation, seems pretty arbitrary, and to differ not only according to the genius of languages, but also according to the stile of authors. However, as they are necessary to avoid obscurity, and prevent misconstructions, and therefore for the better understanding of what we write and read, here follows the use which the generality of the learned make of them, and which is itself grounded upon reason.

A Comma is used to distinguish the several parts of a sentence, and give the reader a proper time for breathing, as likewise to distinguish in enumerations the things that are enumerated, whether they be of the same or a different kind.

A Semicolon is used also to distinguish a part of a sentence of a pretty good length, but in such a manner, that the remaining part of the sentence is not necessary to make a complete sense, which is perfect at the semicolon.

A Colon

A Colon marks a sense that seems to be complete, but so that something may still be added.

The Colon and Semicolon may sometimes indeed be used promiscuously; but when the sentence is tolerably long, or the period composed of four or five sentences, one must observe to make the pauses in the order of the aforesaid stops, finishing by the full stop, when the sense of the sentence is complete.

A Note of Interrogation is used when a question is asked; as,

Quelle heure est-il? | what is o'clock?

A Note of Admiration is used when we express our wonder or admiration at something; as,

Oh ciel, cela est | Oh heaven, this is  
étrange! | strange!







## CHAP. I.

### *Of the ARTICLE.*

**T**HE Noun performs divers offices in speech: it sometimes expresses the subject of which something is spoken, and sometimes the object which particularises that which is said of the subject.

At other times we consider in the Noun the relation or reference which one thing bears to another, or to an action; as for instance,

|                                             |                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Le Roi aime le peuple                       | the King loves the people                        |
| Le peuple aime le Roi                       | the people love the King                         |
| Le peuple a présenté un placet au Roi       | the people have presented an address to the King |
| Les députés sont allés ce matin chez le Roi | the deputies are gone to the King this morning.  |

Those

Those different states or relations of the Noun Substantive, and those various respects in which it may be considered, are denoted in Latin by a variety of terminations of the Noun, which they call cases.

But in French, as well as in English, they are denoted by the place which the Noun has in the sentence, and by a particular sort of words which we call articles.

The Noun *Roi*, therefore, is the subject in the first sentence, and the object in the second. The Noun *peuple*, on the contrary, is the object in one, and the subject in the other. In the next examples the Noun is not used either as a subject or object, but its other relations to the preceding Noun or Verb are denoted by the words immediately coming before it, things being always in relation to each other either of union or separation, fitness or unfitness, quality, situation, dependency, cause, effect, and order.

T 2

The

The English Article Definite *the* is only used before common Nouns denoting an individual distinction, to shew what particular person or thing we mean in speaking or writing.

But in French the Definite Article *le* or *la*, and their plural *les*, are generally to be used through all their cases before any common Noun whatever, even when we do not determine a particular person or thing; such as Nouns of substances, herbs, sciences, arts, metals, virtues, vices, and the like:

|                          |  |                       |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| L'air, la terre, le feu, |  | air, earth, fire, and |
| et l'eau, sont les qua-  |  | water, are the four   |
| tre élémens              |  | elements;             |

as likewise before Nouns of measure, weight, and number, of the things sold and bought:

|                        |  |                         |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Le bled se vend un     |  | corn is sold for a      |
| écu le boisseau        |  | crown a bushel          |
| Elle l'a payé six sous |  | she has paid it at six- |
| la livre               |  | pence a pound:          |

And

and before Nouns of dignities, qualities, offices, and professions, even before terms of abuse, provided they come after such names; as,

*Sing.* Monsieur | Madame | Mademoiselle.

*Plu.* Messieurs | Mesdames | Mesdemoiselles.

Monsieur le President | Mademoiselle l'étourdie

Madame la Duchesse | Monsieur le docteur.

We make also use of the Articles Definite *le, la, les*, through all their cases before proper names of kingdoms, states, provinces, seas, rivers, mountains, and other great places; as likewise before these general Nouns:

Republique | Principauté | état | pays | île

|                                                         |  |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|
| L'Angleterre n'est pas<br>si fertile que l'Es-<br>pagne |  | England is not so<br>fruitful as Spain |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|

|                                            |  |                                             |
|--------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|
| L'Italie est le plus<br>beau pays du monde |  | Italy is the best coun-<br>try in the world |
|--------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|

|                                                            |  |                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------------------|
| La Bourgogne pro-<br>duit meilleur vin<br>que la Champagne |  | Burgundy produces<br>better wine than<br>Champagne. |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------------------|



However, no Article is used before proper names of kingdoms, having before them the Preposition *en* (in), which is always used in French when we speak of the kingdom one is in, and whether one is going or coming:

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Il est Ambassadeur en France     | he is Embassador in France   |
| Elle demeure en Allemagne        | she lives in Germany         |
| Il viendra bientôt en Angleterre | he will soon come to England |
| Elle ira en Irlande              | she will go to Ireland.      |

And when the words denoting the names of kingdoms imply coming from or going out of them, such names take the Article Indefinite *de* (of);

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Je viens de France     | I come from France      |
| Elle part d'Angleterre | she goes out of England |

No Definite Article is used in French before proper names of men, women, angels, gods, goddesses, spirits, demons, animals, towns, cities, suburbs, hamlets, particular

particular places, months, days, and  
similar substantives:

|                                                         |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Pierre a écrit une let-<br>tre à Sophie                 | Peter has written a<br>letter to Sophia                |
| Anne avoit reçu une<br>lettre de George                 | Ann had received a<br>letter from George               |
| Londres est sans con-<br>tredit pavé mieux<br>que Paris | London is without<br>doubt better paved<br>than Paris. |

The Indefinite Article *de* (of) is used;  
*First*; Before Nouns following one of  
these:

Sorte | Espece | Genre | Abondance;  
and any other Noun of which they ex-  
press the kind, character, number, qua-  
lity, matter, nature, and country.

*2dly*; Before Nouns of measure, and  
of magnitude or increase:

|                                              |                                             |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Il croit d'un pouce et<br>demi tous les mois | he grows an inch and<br>a half every month. |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|

*3dly*; Before all Pronouns Personal,  
Possessive Copulative, Demonstrative,  
and Improper; as likewise before the  
Numeral Nouns.

When

When a Noun Substantive in the Genitive case, and another Noun in the Nominative, come together before an English Verb, the Genitive case is often put the first and marked with an apostrophe, followed by the letter *s*; and we say,  
 The King's sister | The Queen's brother,  
 instead of

The sister of the King | the brother of the Queen.

But in French we must make use of the Nominative case before the Genitive, with their proper articles; and say,  
 La soeur du Roi | Le frere de la Reine.

Articles, both Definite and Indefinite, must be repeated in French before as many Nouns as there are in the sentence, in any case whatever, though they are very near alike; whereas they are generally left out in English:

|                           |  |                        |
|---------------------------|--|------------------------|
| La foiblesse, la crainte, |  | weakness, fear, me-    |
| la mèlancolie, et         |  | lancholy, and igno-    |
| l'ignorance, sont les     |  | rance, are the sources |
| sources de la super-      |  | of superstition.       |
| stition                   |  |                        |

These

These Prepositions,

|         |          |          |             |
|---------|----------|----------|-------------|
| Avant   | Après    | Chez     | Dans        |
| Depuis  | Derrière | Devant   | Durant      |
| Excepté | Hormis   | Hors     | Non obstant |
| Parmi   | Pendant  | Selon    | Sous        |
| Suivant | Sur      | Touchant | Vers,       |

require in French an Article Definite after them, and before their next Noun Substantive.

The use of the article after the following prepositions, depends on the character of the noun. When it implies a denomination or appellation, as the true force of the substantive, it takes the article Definite; but when on the contrary, it implies a modification or qualification, and consequently forms with the preposition a kind of compound quality with respect to its meaning, it is then used without any article:

|      |        |       |       |
|------|--------|-------|-------|
| Avec | Contre | Entre | Par   |
| Pour | Malgré | Outre | Sans. |

Several examples will explain the apparent difficulty of this rule:

Sans



|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Sans les passions il n'y  | without passions there |
| auroit ni vertus, ni      | would be neither       |
| vices                     | virtues nor vices      |
| Vivre sans passions c'est | to live without pas-   |
| vivre sans plaisir        | sions is to live with- |
|                           | out pleasure.          |

The Nouns *passions*, *vertus*, and *vices*, in the first sentence, are used as denominative or names of the things which are the object of our speech.

They are the emphatical words of the sentence; but *passions* and *plaisir* are not used in the second as denominative words; for they are not the Nouns of which something is affirmed. The word *vivre* is the thing spoken of: they are only used as modifying words qualifying and specifying that thing.

Although no noun is used in French without an article definite before it, as we have observed, yet there are many nouns which require no article, when being joined with certain Verbs, particularly *avoir*, they form an expression to which

which custom has affixed a particular meaning or idea; as for instance,

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Ajouter foi         | to give credit        |
| Avoir accès         | to have free access   |
| Avoir besoin        | to want               |
| Avoir appetit       | to be hungry          |
| Avoir soif          | to be thirsty         |
| Avoir froid         | to be cold            |
| Avoir chaud         | to be warm            |
| Avoir envie         | to have a mind        |
| Avoir dessein       | to intend             |
| Avoir coutume       | to be accustomed      |
| Avoir honte         | to be ashamed         |
| Avoir pitié         | to pity               |
| Avoir patience      | to be patient         |
| Avoir soin          | to have care          |
| Avoir confiance     | to repose confidence  |
| Avoir peur          | to be afraid          |
| Avoir congé         | to have leave         |
| Avoir lieu          | to have room          |
| Avoir raison        | to be in the right    |
| Avoir tort          | to be in the wrong    |
| Avoir rapport       | to refer              |
| Avoir mal à la tête | to have the head-ach  |
| Avoir mal aux dents | to have the tooth-ach |
| Courir risque       | to run the risk       |
| Demander pardon     | to beg pardon         |

Donner

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Donner congé        | to give leave          |
| Donner ordre        | to give orders         |
| Donner leçon        | to give lessons        |
| Donner lieu         | to give opportunity    |
| Faire attention     | to mind                |
| Faire fortune       | to make a fortune      |
| Faire naufrage      | to shipwreck           |
| Faire honneur       | to do honour           |
| Prendre part        | to interest            |
| Prêter serment      | to take an oath        |
| Rendre compte       | to give an account of  |
| Rendre graces       | to return thanks       |
| Rendre justice      | to do justice          |
| Rendre service      | to do service          |
| Tenir table ouverte | to keep an open table. |

Moreover, the Pronoun Improper *some* is commonly translated by *quelque* in the singular number, and by *quelques* in the plural, as we have seen before. But when the Pronoun *some* is joined with a Noun Substantive, denoting only a part of the thing expressed by the Noun, without specifying the quality or quantity of it; as for instance,

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Give me some bread | Bring us some water |
| Drink some beer    | Boil some eggs;     |

we must render the Pronoun *some* into French by the Definite Articles of the genitive case, *du, de, la, or de l'*, in the singular number, and *des* in the plural, according to the gender and number of the Noun joined with the Pronoun *some*, and therefore we translate the above instances thus;

|                    |  |                        |
|--------------------|--|------------------------|
| Donnez-moi du pain |  | Apportez-nous de l'eau |
| Buvez de la biere  |  | Bouillez des oeufs;    |

before which articles the French expression *une partie* (a part) is understood; because if I ask for some wine, or some meat, I do not mean to have all the wine which is in the bottle, nor all the meat which is in the dish, but only a part of them.

The same articles are likewise to be used in French when the Pronoun *some* is not expressed in the English sentence, but only understood:

|                         |  |                        |
|-------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Elle a de l'esprit, du  |  | she has wit, learning, |
| savoir, et de la beauté |  | and beauty             |

Son



|                                                                            |  |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Son pere lui envoie<br>de tems en tems des<br>petites sommes d'ar-<br>gent |  | his father now and then<br>sends him small sums<br>of money. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|

But if the Pronoun *some* be used in the sense of *a little of*, which is rendered into French by *un peu de*; as for instance,

Give me some butter | Put some sugar in it;  
then we make use of the article Indefinite *de*; and we say,

|                              |  |                              |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Donnez-moi un peu<br>de lait |  | Mettez-y un peu de<br>sucre. |
|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|





## CHAP. II.

### *Of the NOUN.*

**A**S the rules for the use and construction of the Noun Substantive are, in every language, especially in the French, very different from those for the use and construction of the Noun Adjective, we think proper to follow the method observed in the first part, by speaking separately of these two different sorts of Nouns.

---

### *Of the NOUN SUBSTANTIVE.*

When many Nouns Substantive, of different genders and numbers, or genders only, put in opposition in the same case, and connected by a Conjunction, have an Adjective common to them, it agrees in gender and number with the last Substantive:

|                         |  |                         |
|-------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Il avoit les yeux et la |  | he had his eyes and his |
| bouche ouverte          |  | mouth open              |
| Il avoit la bouche, et  |  | he had his mouth and    |
| les yeux ouverts        |  | his eyes open.          |

But when there is one or many words between the last Substantive and the Adjective, then the Adjective common to the Substantives agrees with the Noun Masculine, though the last be Feminine. And if the Noun Substantive be in the singular number, the Adjective common to all the Substantives must be put in the plural number and masculine gender :

|                          |  |                     |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Le travail, la conduite, |  | work, conduct, and  |
| et la fortune joints     |  | fortune, joined to- |
| ensemble                 |  | gether.             |

And when the Adjective common to three or more Nouns Substantive, whether of the same or different gender, is preceded or governed by the Verb *être*, it must have another Noun Substantive in the plural to agree with;

L'or,

|                         |  |                         |
|-------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| L'or, l'argent, la re-  |  | gold, silver, fame, ho- |
| nommée, les hon-        |  | nours, and dignities,   |
| neurs, et les dignités, |  | are uncertain and       |
| font des choses incer-  |  | perishable things.      |
| taines et perissables   |  |                         |

The substantive *gens*, signifying *people*, is a plural noun, and is never used in speaking of a determinate number of people, unless attended by an adjective; therefore we do not say, as in English,

Trois ou quatre gens | three or four people;  
But,

Trois ou quatre personnes:  
and we properly say,

|                     |  |                       |
|---------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Trois honnetes gens |  | three genteel persons |
| Dix jeunes gens     |  | ten young people.     |

The noun *gens* is masculine, when it comes before an adjective, and feminine when it comes after:

|                         |  |                       |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ce sont des gens hardis |  | they are bold people  |
| Ce sont des bonnes gens |  | they are good people. |

In nouns ending in the singular number in *nt*; as,

|                |   |                    |
|----------------|---|--------------------|
| Enfant   child |   | Parent   relation, |
|                | U | it                 |



it is become usual to leave out the final *t* in the plural before the *s*:

Enfans } instead of { Enfants  
 Parens } Parents.

We have observed before, that many substantives, which are used in English for both genders, such as *étranger* (foreigner), are distinguished in French, one gender from the other, by adding the vowel *e* to the noun masculine for rendering it of the feminine gender. But these nouns which have a different termination, according to their different gender, are to be excepted.

| <i>Masculine.</i> |          | <i>Feminine.</i> |             |
|-------------------|----------|------------------|-------------|
| Empereur          | Emperor  | Imperatrice      | Empress     |
| Electeur          | Electors | Electrice        | Electresses |
| Roi               | King     | Reine            | Queen       |
| Prince            | Prince   | Princesse        | Princess    |
| Duc               | Duke     | Duchesse         | Duchess     |
| Comte             | Earl     | Comtesse         | Countess    |
| Baron             | Baron    | Baronne          | Baroness    |
| Gouverneur        | Governor | Gouvernante      | Governess   |

Besides,

Besides, there are both in French and English many nouns which have, in one language, several significations, and are translated in the other by different nouns, according to their different meaning.

The English noun *country*, for instance, has three significations, and therefore it is rendered into French by *pays* when it means a *kingdom* or *town*, by *campagne* when it signifies *fields*, and by *patrie* when we speak of the *kingdom* or *place* we were born in; and the nouns *travel*, *voyage*, and *journey*, are translated in French by the only Noun *voyage*.

### *Of the* NOUN ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives, in English, are commonly to be used before their substantives; as,

A beautiful woman | a new house;

But, in French, there is no general rule on this particular; therefore we some-

times put adjectives before and sometimes after substantives; and we say,

Une belle femme | Une maison neuve;

it depending only upon the ear, with which we must consult for the sake of better sound.

However, when many adjectives are joined with a noun substantive in the same sentence, as for instance,

He is a rich, handsome, and learned man,  
we put them after the substantive; and we say,

C'est un homme riche, beau, et savant.

The following sorts of adjectives are likewise to be put after the substantive:

*First*; Verbal adjectives, whether of the same nature with gerunds; as,

L'homme divertissant | the amusing man  
La femme charmante | the charming woman;

or of the same nature with participles:

Un pays habité | an inhabited country  
Une cruche cassée | a broken pitcher.

*2dly*; Adjec-

*2dly*; Adjectives of nations; as,

|                             |  |                      |
|-----------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Un gentilhomme An-<br>glois |  | an English gentleman |
| Une dame Françoise          |  | a French Lady        |
| La musique Italienne        |  | the Italian music.   |

*3dly*; Adjectives of colour; as,

|                 |  |             |
|-----------------|--|-------------|
| Un habit bleu   |  | a blue coat |
| Un bonnet rouge |  | a red cap.  |

*4thly*; Adjectives of figure; as,

|                   |  |                 |
|-------------------|--|-----------------|
| Un chapeau rond   |  | a round hat     |
| Une pierre carrée |  | a square stone. |

*5thly*; Adjectives expressing the physical and natural quality; as,

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Un tems froid        |  | cold weather         |
| La langue maternelle |  | the native language. |

*6thly*; Adjectives respecting the feeling, hearing, smelling, and tasting:

|               |  |                   |
|---------------|--|-------------------|
| La peau douce |  | the smooth skin   |
| Le fruit amer |  | the bitter fruit. |

*7thly*; Adjectives ending,

|                |  |           |  |          |
|----------------|--|-----------|--|----------|
| In <i>ic</i>   |  | Public    |  | public   |
| In <i>ique</i> |  | Pacifique |  | pacific  |
| In <i>ile</i>  |  | Fertile   |  | fruitful |

U 3

In



|                 |           |           |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------|
| In <i>ule</i>   | Credule   | credulous |
| In <i>uel</i>   | Cruel     | cruel     |
| In <i>esque</i> | Grotesque | grotesque |
| In <i>if</i>    | Vif       | lively.   |

These Adjectives denoting dimension:

|         |      |                    |          |
|---------|------|--------------------|----------|
| Haut    | high | long               | long     |
| Profond | deep | large <sup>r</sup> | wide     |
| Gros    | big  | distant            | distant, |

which come in English before the words of measure or magnitude, are to be put before them in French, and are attended by the indefinite article *de*:

Une colonne haute de | a column sixty feet  
soixante pieds | high;

literally, high by sixty feet;

Un fossé profond de | A ditch twenty feet  
vingt pieds et large | deep and ten wide.  
de dix

These and similar sentences may be expressed differently, in a manner more common as well as more elegant, by turning the adjective into its substantive, with the word of the measure before,

fore, as in English; but so that both the word of the measure and that of dimension be preceded by the indefinite article *de*:

|                                             |  |                         |
|---------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Un homme de six<br>pieds de hauteur         |  | a man six feet high     |
| Un puit de cinquante<br>pieds de profondeur |  | a well fifty feet deep. |

Adjectives are sometimes used in the sense of substantives, and as such stand in the sentence without any preceding or subsequent word of preference, and have before them the definite article *le*:

|                                              |  |                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Nous devons preferer<br>l'utile à l'agréable |  | we ought to prefer<br>what is useful to<br>what is agreeable. |
|----------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------------------------|

The nouns adjective masculine,

|         |  |      |  |     |  |         |
|---------|--|------|--|-----|--|---------|
| Beau    |  | fine |  | Fou |  | foolish |
| Nouveau |  | new  |  | Mou |  | soft,   |

when followed by a noun beginning with a vowel or *b* mute, are said for the sake of harmony,

Bel | Nouvel | Fol | mol.

They are always used for the Feminine, thus,

Belle | Nouvelle | Folle | Molle.

And here we must observe, that although we commonly add the vowel *e* to the adjective masculine, in order to render it of the feminine; yet there are many adjectives, which, deviating from this rule, require the addition of a syllable. The following are the most frequently used :

*Masculine.*

Blanc

Sec

Frais

Public

Vieux

Neuf

Vif

Nul

Pareil

Naturel

Bon

Ancien

Malin

Long

Doux

white

dry

fresh

public

old

new

lively, quick

no

like

natural

good

ancient

malicious

long

sweet

*Feminine*

Blanche

Seche

Fraiche

Publique

Vieille

Neuve

Vive

Nulle

Pareille

Naturelle

Bonne

Ancienne

Maligne

Longue

Douce

Faux

| <i>Masculine.</i> |         | <i>Feminine</i> |
|-------------------|---------|-----------------|
| Faux              | false   | Fausse          |
| Jaloux            | jealous | Jalouse         |
| Gras              | fat     | Grasse          |
| Franc             | free    | Franche         |
| Grec              | greek   | Greque          |
| Las               | tired   | Lasse           |
| Gros              | big     | Grosse          |
| Bas               | low     | Basse           |
| Epais             | thick   | Epaisse         |
| Crud              | raw     | Crue            |
| Nud               | naked   | Nue             |
| Verd              | green   | Verte.          |

### *Of the COMPARATIVE.*

We have seen before that the comparative of *mauvais* (bad) is *pire*, and its superlative *le pire*; however, we may also say instead of them *plus mechant*, (worse) *le plus mechant*, (the worst) for persons, and *plus mauvais*, *le plus mauvais*, for things; and we may also say *plus petit*, (lesser or smaller) and *le plus petit*, (the least or the smallest) instead of *moindre* and *le moindre*.

If



If the particle comparative *than* be followed in English by a verb, it must be made in French either by the infinitive mood with the preposition *de* after the particle *que*,

|                    |  |                         |
|--------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Il aime mieux de   |  | he likes better to play |
| jouer que de s'ap- |  | than to apply him-      |
| pliquer à l'étude  |  | self to study:          |

or by the imperfect of the indicative, or its compound with the conjunction *si* (so) after the particle *que*,

|                         |  |                       |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il est plus heureux que |  | he is happier than if |
| s'il regnoit            |  | he reigned.           |

And if the verb which follows the particle comparative *than*, in English, be not in, nor can be rendered into French by the infinitive, it must take in French the negative *ne* before,

|                        |  |                        |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Il est plus habile que |  | he is more clever than |
| je ne croyois          |  | I thought.             |

This use of the particle negative *ne* may easily be accounted for: his ingenuity and address exceeding my opinion,  
proves

proves a defect or negation of my opinion in that respect, and the meaning of this example is;

Je ne le croyois pas si habile que je le trouve | I did not think him so clever as he is.

For this reason the French introduce the particle negative *ne*, which is not rendered into English from the different genius of the two languages.

The particles comparative *plus* (more), and *moins* (less), meeting with a number, are attended by the article indefinite *de*, which in this sense answers to the English particle *than*:

Il y a plus de dix ans | it is more than ten years.

The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, which are always followed by the particle *que*, after the adjective, are rendered into English sometimes by *so* before the adjective, and the particle *que* by *as* after it, and sometimes by *as* before and after:

Je ne le croyois pas si heureux qu'il est | I did not believe him so happy as he is.

Elle

|                                     |  |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Elle est aussi belle que<br>sa sœur |  | she is as handsome as<br>her sister. |
|-------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|

The particles comparative *tant* and *autant*, followed likewise by the particle *que*, and signifying *so much as*, or *as much as*, are construed with verbs and nouns as *si* and *aussi* with adjectives:

|                                                                                   |  |                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Elle n'a pas tant d'es-<br>prit que sa sœur,<br>mais elle a autant<br>de vivacité |  | she has not so much<br>wit as her sister, but<br>is as lively as she |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                   |  |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Je l'aime autant que<br>mon frère |  | I love him as much as<br>my brother. |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|

The particle *si* is used in negative propositions, and affirmative also, when there is no comparison of equality made between two things, and the particle *aussi* is used in affirmative propositions with such a comparison:

|                                                                                         |  |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Il n'est rien si beau<br>que la liberté                                                 |  | nothing is so pleasing<br>as liberty                                                |
| Le plaisir de l'étude<br>est aussi agreable que<br>celui de l'oïfivité est<br>dangereux |  | the pleasure of studying<br>is as agreeable as<br>that of laziness is<br>dangerous. |

The

The particle *as*, repeated with an adverb between, is rendered into French by *aussi* and *que*, or by *le plus* and *que*, with the adverb between both:

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Venez aussi souvent, |  | come as often as you |
| or le plus souvent   |  | can.                 |
| que vous pouvez      |  |                      |

---

### *Of the SUPERLATIVE.*

Superlatives sometimes go before and sometimes after the substantive, it depending, as in adjectives, upon the best found; but when the superlative follows immediately its substantive, it requires an article definite before, besides that which is used before the noun:

|                         |  |                       |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Vôtre frere est l'homme |  | your brother is the   |
| le plus aimable         |  | most amiable man      |
| du monde                |  | in the world          |
| Ma soeur est la femme   |  | my sister is the hap- |
| la plus heureuse du     |  | piest woman in the    |
| monde                   |  | world.                |

The



The particles *plus* and *moins*, preceded by the articles definite *le*, *la*, *les*, are to be repeated before each adjective, when such words are used in French to form a superlative:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il est le plus pauvre, |  | he is the poorest and |
| et le plus malheu-     |  | unhappiest among      |
| reux de ses enfans     |  | his children.         |

---

### *Of the Nouns of NUMBER.*

Numeral Nouns always come immediately before the person or thing spoken of, and cannot be preceded by any substantive or adjective, if we except only the pronouns possessive copulative:

|                               |  |                            |
|-------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| Il a deux filles              |  | he has two daughters       |
| Elle a quatre fils            |  | she has four sons          |
| Mes trois freres sont malades |  | my three brothers are ill. |

The French conjunction *et*, signifying *and*, is put in French before the unity both of numeral and ordinal nouns; as,

|                 |  |               |
|-----------------|--|---------------|
| Vingt et un     |  | twenty-one    |
| Vingt et unième |  | twenty-first: |

But it is not put before the other combined numbers, which follow the numeral noun *soixante*, wherein the consonant *x* is to be pronounced as a double *s*:

|                            |  |                      |
|----------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Soixante et un <i>Éc.</i>  |  | sixty-one <i>Éc.</i> |
| Soixante et six <i>Éc.</i> |  | sixty-six <i>Éc.</i> |

up to *quatre vingt* (eighty), after which there is no *et* put even before the unity;

|                 |  |             |
|-----------------|--|-------------|
| Quatre vingt-un |  | eighty-one: |
|-----------------|--|-------------|

Moreover we properly say,

|                    |  |                   |
|--------------------|--|-------------------|
| Vingt et un an     |  | twenty-one years  |
| Trente et un jour  |  | thirty-one days   |
| Quarante et un écu |  | forty-one crowns: |

But custom will have us say,

|                     |  |                    |
|---------------------|--|--------------------|
| Vingt et un chevaux |  | twenty-one horses, |
|---------------------|--|--------------------|

and not *cheval* (horse).

The reason why the noun substantive in the above examples is in the singular number, is because it agrees with *un* immediately preceding it, which noun is previously understood to follow the plural numeral in the plural number *vingt*

*et*

*et un an*, being used instead of *vingt ans et un an*.

From the numeral nouns the ordinal are formed, by adding the syllables *ième* to the last consonant of the numeral, and cutting off therefore the vowel *e* from those which have it; as,

|             |        |           |            |
|-------------|--------|-----------|------------|
| From Deux   | two    | Deuxième  | second     |
| From Quatre | four   | Quatrième | fourth     |
| From Trente | thirty | Trentième | thirtieth. |

We must except only the ordinal nouns,  
Premier | first      || Second | second.

In the numeral *neuf* (nine) the letter *f* is changed into *v*, *neuvième* (ninth).

The numeral *second* is pronounced as if we were to write *sgond*; and in the numeral *neuf*, when followed by a vowel or *b* mute, the consonant *f* is sounded as a *v*:

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| Neuf ans           | nine years    |
| Neuf heures        | nine o'clock, |
| Pronounce Neuv ans | Neuv heures.  |

Ordinal

Ordinal nouns form also each an adverb, with the addition of the terminations *ment* or *ement*;

|         |  |              |
|---------|--|--------------|
| Premier |  | Premièrement |
| Dixième |  | Dixièmement, |

and so on to twenty.

In the place of these adverbs we may say,

En premier lieu      |      En dixième lieu.

Besides, we make use of the numeral, and not of the ordinal noun, in speaking of the day of a month, and then the month goes after the day:

|                    |  |                       |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Le huit de Janvier |  | the eighth of January |
| Le onze de Mars    |  | the eleventh of March |
| Le dix de Juillet  |  | the tenth of July;    |

But we do not say,

L'un du moi    | *but*    |    Le premier du mois.

The numeral nouns *huit* and *onze*, as well as the ordinal *huitième* and *onzième*, do not require the elision at the end of the word coming before them.

X

Moreover,



Moreover, we never put the noun numeral *un* before *cent* and *mille*, when the indefinite article *a* is put in English before hundred and thousand:

|                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| J'en ai cent        | I have a hundred               |
| Elle en avoit mille | she had a thousand of<br>them, |

except only to denote unity in opposition to plurality,

Un cent de plumes | one hundred of pens.

In speaking of the series of Kings, or Sovereigns, and denoting any particular Prince, we make use of the numeral nouns without an article:

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| Henry Trois    | Henry the third       |
| Louis Quatorze | Lewis the fourteenth, |

But we must say,

Charles Premier | George second,

and never *un* or *deux*.





### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the PRONOUN.*

**B**EFORE we proceed, it is highly important to observe, that the use and construction of all the French pronouns, divided into seven sorts, differ so greatly from the English, that this subject requires the utmost attention in scholars in order to speak and write the French correctly.

But that which renders this matter still more difficult, arises from the want of terms in the denomination of the English pronouns; some of which, though expressed by the same words, have different meanings, and belong consequently to different sorts; whereas in the French every pronoun, having only one signification, is easily distinguished from every other.

Among the English pronouns, which are sometimes of one species and at other times of another, these are the most necessary to be known:

Him | her | them | which | what.

The three former have four meanings with respect to the French, because they are used as pronouns personal, as conjunctive, as demonstrative, and as relative; and the two latter have three significations, the first of which being used as interrogative, demonstrative, and relative; and the other as demonstrative, interrogative adjective, and interrogative substantive.

All these pronouns are rendered into French by as many different words as they have significations, as we shall see in their proper places in which this subject is treated at large, to avoid any equivocation or mistake.



*Of*

*Of the PRONOUNS PERSONAL.*

Personal Pronouns come generally in French immediately before verbs, as we have seen in many instances. But they may come after verbs in these two cases only.

*First*; After these and similar verbs;

|           |            |           |              |
|-----------|------------|-----------|--------------|
| Dire      | } to say   | Repondre  | to answer    |
| Repliquer |            | Ajouter   | to add       |
| Reprendre | } to reply | Continuer | to continue, |

used parenthetically, as is sometimes practised in English with the same verbs:

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Il me paroît, dit-il    | it seems to me, said he |
| Je crois, répondit-elle | I think, answered she.  |

*2dly*; After these five conjunctions,

à peine | peut-être | aussi | ainsi | au moins:

|                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Peut-être est il parti              | perhaps he is gone out               |
| A peine puis-je me faire comprendre | I can hardly make myself understood. |

But in most of these cases the transposition of the pronoun personal is rather an elegance than a rule of grammar.



Pronouns personal are to be repeated in French before each verb in these three cases.

*First*; When they are followed by verbs in different tenses;

|                                                          |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Je vous ai toujours<br>dit, et je vous dirai<br>toujours | I have always told and<br>will ever tell you |
| Nous avons parlé et<br>nous parlerons pour<br>vous       | we have spoken and<br>will speak for you:    |

But when the phrases are alike, it is indifferent whether they are expressed or not.

However, the pronouns of the third person *il* or *elle*, and their plural *ils* or *elles*, need not to be repeated in common conversation, though the phrases are different:

|                                                                                       |                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Il est si étourdi qu'il<br>n'a jamais appris, et<br>n'apprendra jamais<br>le François | he is so giddy that he<br>never learnt, nor<br>will ever learn the<br>French. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

*2dly*; When we pass from a negative to an affirmative, or from an affirmative to a negative:

|                          |  |                       |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il a promis de le faire, |  | he promised to do it, |
| mais il ne le fera pas   |  | but will not.         |

3<sup>dly</sup>; When the second verb is preceded by one of these conjunctions,

|           |  |       |  |       |  |     |
|-----------|--|-------|--|-------|--|-----|
| Cependant |  | Même  |  | Aussi |  | Que |
| Neanmoins |  | Ainsi |  | Mais  |  | Ou. |

|                      |  |                  |
|----------------------|--|------------------|
| Lorsque vous faites  |  | when you do your |
| vôtre devoir, et que |  | duty, and behave |
| vous vous compor-    |  | well &c.         |
| tez bien &c.         |  |                  |

where *que* has the force of *lorsque*.

The pronouns personal admit of the negative *ne*, and the pronouns conjunctive or relative between them and the verb:

|                     |  |                 |
|---------------------|--|-----------------|
| Je ne vois personne |  | I see no-body   |
| Elle nous quitta    |  | she left us     |
| Il la gronda        |  | he scolded her. |

But they will not admit of any adverb or other word between them and the verb, as they often do in English; therefore we cannot say,

|                     |  |                   |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|
| Je toujours croyois |  | I always believed |
| Vous souvent dites  |  | you often say:    |

but

but we must properly say,

Je croyois toujours | Vous dites souvent.

The pronouns personal *moi* and *lui*, are sometimes used to distinguish in a more energetick way one person from another:

Lui il ne veut pas y | he will not go there,  
aller et moi j'irai | but I will.

The pronouns *lui* and *eux* may be in a regular speech the subject of and come before the verb, instead of the pronouns *il* and *ils*, without any pronoun personal, in these three cases:

*First*; When the pronoun is attended by the adjective *seul* (only),

Lui seul parle bien | he only speaks well  
Eux seuls le savent | they only know it.

*2dly*; When the pronoun must be separated from its verb by another accidental sentence joined to it by means of the pronoun relative *qui*,

Lui qui ne favoit pas | he, who did not know  
la raison, fut bien | the reason, was much  
surpris | surpris,

or by means of a gerund,

|                        |  |                     |
|------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Eux voyant qu'il étoit |  | they, seeing he was |
| mort, s'en retour-     |  | dead, came back.    |
| nerent                 |  |                     |

3dly; When the sentence, or the members of the sentence wherein they are used, must relate the particulars of some fact (declared in general in the former sentence or member) which are distributed among the agents of it:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Les deux freres et le |  | the two brothers and  |
| voisin ont commis     |  | the neighbour have    |
| le crime; eux ont     |  | committed the crime;  |
| frappé l'homme, et    |  | the two former beat   |
| lui l'a tué           |  | the man, and the lat- |
|                       |  | ter has killed him.   |

The pronouns personal,

Moi, toi, lui, *or* elle, nous, vous, eux, *or* elles,  
are always used in answering questions:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Qui est ce qui a fait  |  | who had done that? it |
| cela? c'est moi        |  | is I                  |
| Qui est ce qui a fermé |  | who has opened the    |
| la fenêtre? ce n'est   |  | window? it is not     |
| pas lui; c'est elle    |  | he; it is she,        |
|                        |  | and                   |



and after any preposition whatever,

|            |            |             |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sans nous  | without us | Avec eux    | with them   |
| Après vous | after you  | Avant elles | before them |

### The pronouns

Myself | thyself | himself | herself  
 Ourselves | yourselves | themselves,  
 are rendered into French, as we have seen  
 before, by

Me | te | se | nous | vous | se,

when they are conjunctive, commonly  
 used through all the tenses of reflected  
 verbs as their objects; but they are some-  
 times used in English as the subject of  
 the verb, and then they are translated by  
 the pronouns personal, to which is added  
 the pronominal word *même*, meaning  
*self*, when it is neither a pronoun impro-  
 per, nor an adverb; thus,

Moi même, toi même, lui même, elle même,  
 Nous mêmes, vous mêmes, eux mêmes,  
 elles mêmes;

and communicating a particular force  
 or emphasis to the word with which it is  
 joined;

|                     |  |                       |
|---------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Le Roi lui même l'a |  | the King himself ap-  |
| approuvé            |  | proved it             |
| La Reine elle même  |  | the Queen herself was |
| en fut surprise     |  | surprised at it.      |

And here I cannot avoid making mention of the instance in which the pronouns personal *il* or *lui*, and *elle* (though the subject of the question be a rational creature) cannot be used, and therefore are substituted by the pronouns relative *le* and *la*: seeing a man or a woman, whom you suppose that you know, you accost them thus;

êtes vous Monsieur un tel?

êtes vous Madame une telle?

Literally, { Are you such a Gentleman?  
                  { Are you such a Lady?

they must answer to you,

Je le suis, *or* je la suis | I am:

for should they say,

Je suis il, *or* lui | je suis elle,

then the pronouns of the first and third persons would be applied to the same person

person at once and the same time, and by the same person; which would be a grammatical solecism, and consequently improper.

The pronoun personal *soi* occurs always as an object put in opposition with the subject of the verb, and repeating sometimes the pronominal word *même* (self) to be joined to it:

|                                                                      |  |                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| L'homme qui n'est<br>bon que pour soi<br>n'est pas digne de<br>vivre |  | the man who is only<br>good for himself<br>does not deserve to<br>live |
| Voici un tableau qui<br>est tombé de soi<br>même                     |  | here is a picture which<br>fell down of itself.                        |

### *Of the PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE.*

In speaking about this subject, in the first part we have observed, that though the pronouns conjunctive,

Me | te | se | lui | nous | vous | leur,  
are commonly put in French immediately

diately before verbs, yet they must be used after the verb when it is in the second person singular, and the first and second plural of the imperative. It may be added, however, that this exception is to be observed in affirmative sentences only; as,

|                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| Envoyes-lui l'argent | send him the money |
| Arretons-nous ici    | let us stop here   |
| Habillez-vous        | dress yourself.    |

For, when any pronoun conjunctive whatever is used in negative sentences, it must be put immediately before the verb, even through all persons of the imperative, without the least exception:

|                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| Ne lui envoyes pas   | do not send him the    |
| l'argent             | money                  |
| Ne nous arretons pas | let us not stop here   |
| ici                  |                        |
| Ne vous habillez pas | do not dress yourself. |

We have also seen, that in the English pronouns *to him* for the masculine, *to her* for the feminine in the singular number, rendered



rendered into French by the pronoun *lui*, and *to them* for both genders in the plural, translated by *leur*, the preposition *to* is sometimes omitted or understood, and therefore most learners, especially those who are unacquainted with the Latin, confound the two meanings of these words *him*, *her*, and *them*, and do not distinguish in their exercises the case in which such pronouns are conjunctive, in French, from the case wherein the very same words are pronouns relative.

To remedy this too frequent mistake, the learner ought to observe if the pronouns *him*, *her*, and *them*, are used in the English sentence in the dative case, as denoting one or many persons to whom something is given, or addressed, or rather if they relate to or represent one or many persons, who being in the accusative case, as the object of the verb, receive the action expressed by it; and then conclude, that in the former supposition, the pronouns

nouns *him*, *her*, and *them*, are conjunctive, and therefore answer to the French pronouns *lui* in the singular, and *leur* in the plural of both genders; and in the latter they are relative, and consequently translated by the pronouns *le* and *la* in the singular, and *les* in the plural.

In a word, when the pronouns *him*, *her*, and *them*, can be turned in the sentence by *to him*, *to her*, and *to them*, they are conjunctive, and when they cannot be turned, they are relative:

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Elle lui dit la raison     | she told him the reason  |
| Il lui presta son carrosse | he lent her his coach    |
| Je leur fis réponse        | I made them an answer    |
| Elle le persuada           | she persuaded him        |
| Il la flatte trop          | he flatters her too much |
| Je les excuse              | I excuse them.           |

In the three former instances I must make use in French of the pronouns conjunctive *lui* and *leur*, because the pronouns *him*, *her*, and *them*, are used in the dative case instead of *to him*, *to her*, and *to them*, and in the three latter I want the pronouns

pronouns relative *le, la, les*, because the same words in English being in the accusative case, cannot admit of the preposition *to* before them.

All the pronouns conjunctive in French are to be repeated before their verbs:

|                                             |  |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------|
| Il me prie, me, sup-<br>plie, et me conjure |  | he begs, beseeches,<br>and conjures me |
| Je vous dis, et vous<br>declare             |  | I tell and declare to<br>you:          |

But we must except only the case in which the verb is of the same signification with or composed of the first, or only denotes a repetition of the action:

|                                                  |  |                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Il me dit, et redit<br>toujours la même<br>chose |  | he tells, and always<br>tells again the same<br>thing to me. |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------|

### *Of the PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.*

The pronouns possessive *ma, ta, sa*, as we have observed before, are to be used in French before nouns substantive of  
the

the feminine gender in the singular number; but when a feminine noun begins with a vowel or *h* mute, we make use of the masculine pronouns possessive *mon*, *ton*, *son*, for the sake of better harmony:

|              |  |             |
|--------------|--|-------------|
| Mon épée     |  | my sword    |
| Ton histoire |  | thy history |
| Son armée    |  | his army.   |

When the correspondent English pronouns possessive come after a verb with a noun governing them, they are resolved in French into the pronouns conjunctive, which are put in the dative case.

Thus, instead of saying,

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| J'ai coupé mon doigt |  | I have cut my finger |
| Il brula sa jambe    |  | he scalded his leg;  |

I speak more properly thus,

|                           |  |                       |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Je me suis coupé le doigt |  | Il se brula la jambe. |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------|

They are wholly left out before substantives, when a verb is preceded by a pronoun conjunctive, which sufficiently shews whose is the thing of which we

Y                      speak,



speaking, and the noun is then attended by a definite article; as,

Je lui dois la vie | I owe my life to him,  
instead of *ma vie*; for the pronoun *je*  
specifies whose life is meant, and there-  
fore makes the possessive pronoun un-  
necessary.

For the same reason we cannot say,

J'ai mal à ma tête, *or* | I have a pain in my  
à mes dents | head, or in my teeth,

but we must say,

J'ai mal à la tête, *or* aux dents;

for no one can have a pain in any head  
or teeth but his own, and consequently  
an explanatory word is superfluous.

Nevertheless, if the pain is become as  
it were habitual, we may say in speaking  
of it to somebody aware of the circum-  
stance,

Ma tête, *or* ma jambe, | I have a pain in my  
me fait mal | head, or in my leg;

wherefore the addition of the pronoun  
possessive

possessive *ma* denotes there the inveteracy of the disorder.

Pronouns possessive are to be repeated in French before each noun with which they are construed in the sentence:

|                      |  |                           |
|----------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Il a perdu en peu de |  | he lost his father, wife, |
| tems son père, sa    |  | and brothers, in a        |
| femme, et ses freres |  | short time.               |

In some English expressions, wherein occurs any pronoun possessive relative, we make use in French of the pronouns possessive copulative, regularly preceding their nouns substantive:

|                      |  |                        |
|----------------------|--|------------------------|
| C'est un de mes amis |  | he is a friend of mine |
| J'étois son voisin   |  | I was a neighbour of   |
|                      |  | hers.                  |

---

### *Of the* PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

When the pronoun demonstrative *ce* is the nominative of the verb *être*, this verb must be in the singular number. But when the verb is followed in its

simple tenses by a third person plural, it is used also in the plural:

Ce sont des vrais amis | they are true friends.

When the pronouns *celui* for the masculine, *celle* for the feminine, and their plural *ceux* and *celles*, being followed by the pronoun relative *qui*, answer to the English pronouns demonstrative and relative, *he who*, *she who*, and *they who*, they are referable only to persons; and the pronoun demonstrative is the nominative of one verb, and the relative of another:

|                        |  |                         |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Celui qui ment ne sera |  | he who tells lies shall |
| jamais mon ami         |  | never be my friend      |
| Celle qui n'est pas    |  | she who is not modest   |
| modeste ne merite      |  | does not deserve my     |
| pas mon estime         |  | esteem.                 |

The pronoun *ce* is used before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant; but it requires the addition of the letter *t*, thus (*cet*) when the noun masculine begins with a vowel or *h* mute for better sound's sake:

Cet

Cet an | this year      || Cet homme | this man.

When the demonstrative pronouns *ce qui*, or *ce que*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts, are jointly with the verb, and the subject comes before the verb *être* in the second part of the sentence, the pronoun *ce* must be repeated before the verb *être* followed by the preposition *de*, if it come before an infinitive, or by the conjunction *que*, if in another mood:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ce que je crains c'est |  | what I fear is, to be |
| d'être surpris         |  | surprised             |
| Ce qui l'afflige c'est |  | what concerns him is, |
| qu'on le croit cou-    |  | that he is thought    |
| pable                  |  | guilty.               |

But the pronoun *ce* must not be repeated before the verb *être* when there comes next an adjective:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ce que vous dites est |  | what you say is true: |
| vrai                  |  |                       |

and when it is a substantive, it is indifferent whether it be repeated or left out;

Ce que je dis est la vérité, or c'est la vérité;



except when the verb *être* is in the plural, for then *ce* must be always repeated:

|                       |  |                    |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------|
| Ce que je ne peux pas |  | what I cannot bear |
| souffrir ce sont les  |  | are treacheries.   |
| trahisons             |  |                    |

### *Of the PRONOUNS' INTERROGATIVE.*

The Interrogative Pronouns,

|           |                      |              |
|-----------|----------------------|--------------|
| Le quel   | } and their plural } | Les quels    |
| La quelle |                      | Les quelles, |

are used in French like the interrogative pronoun *which* in English, both for persons and things, and are always followed by a genitive case either expressed or understood.

The following and similar expressions, most commonly and sometimes very necessarily used in asking questions in French,

|                   |  |                      |
|-------------------|--|----------------------|
| Qui est là?       |  | who is there?        |
| Qui a fait cela?  |  | who has done that?   |
| Que dites vous?   |  | what do you say?     |
| Que vouloit elle? |  | what would she have? |
|                   |  | are                  |

are idiomatically rendered into,

Qui est ce qui est là?

Qui est ce qui a fait cela?

Qu'est ce que vous dites?

Qu'est ce qu'elle vouloit?

Nay, we often even say,

Qu'est ce que c'est que vous dites?

*Literally*, what is what it is that you say?

and to this intimation,

J'ai quelque chose à | I have something to  
vous dire | tell you,

the most common answer is,

Qu'est ce que c'est? | what is it?

and not *qu'est ce?* nor *quoi?* which last would rather imply, that we had not clearly heard what was said to us.

### *Of the PRONOUNS RELATIVE.*

The relative pronouns,

Le quel } and their plural { Les quels  
La quelle } Les quelles,

are

are used instead of

Qui *or* que | who, which, *or* that,

only for the sake of removing the ambiguities that may arise from those pronouns, which are of both genders and numbers, and said both of persons and things in the nominative or accusative case.

Thus when I say, for instance,

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Alexandre fils de Phi- |  | Alexander son of Phi- |
| lippe, qui regna le    |  | lip, who reigned the  |
| premier en Asie        |  | first in Asia;        |

one cannot tell whether it was Alexander or Philip who reigned; whereas *le quel*, being put instead of *qui*, will denote that it was Alexander, because when two nouns of the same gender come together, the relative *le quel* refers to the former, and the relative *qui* or *que* to the latter.

Nay, if any body says,

|                            |  |                         |
|----------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| C'est la cause de cet      |  | it is the cause of this |
| effet que je vais          |  | effect of which I       |
| traiter, <i>or</i> dont je |  | am going to treat;      |
| vais traiter               |  |                         |
|                            |  | you                     |

you cannot distinguish whether the effect or the cause is the subject of his treatise; but the use of the pronoun relative *du quel*, or *de la quelle*, in the place of *que* or *dont*, denotes that the effect or the cause is the subject in question.

Although the relative pronoun *qui* is commonly used in French for both genders and numbers, and with respect to all sorts of objects in the nominative case, yet in the genitive, dative, and ablative cases, we make use of *qui* with reference to personal objects only, or such as are considered in the light of personal subjects, and of the pronouns

|           |  |              |
|-----------|--|--------------|
| Le quel   |  | Les quels    |
| La quelle |  | Les quelles, |

with reference to irrational or inanimate objects, more especially after any preposition;

|                               |  |                             |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| L'homme <i>or</i> la femme    |  | the man <i>or</i> the woman |
| qui vous a parlé              |  | who spoke to you            |
| Le ciel de qui <i>or</i> dont |  | heaven, from whence         |
| vient mon secours             |  | comes my succour!           |
|                               |  | because                     |



because *ciel* is here personified:

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| C'est une leçon à la  | it is a lesson to which |
| quelle vous n'avez    | you have paid no        |
| pas fait attention    | attention               |
| La personne avec qui  | the person with whom    |
| j'ai correspondance,  | I have a correspon-     |
| n'est pas à Paris     | dence is not in Paris   |
| C'est l'objet pour le | it is the object for    |
| quel je vous derange  | which I trouble you.    |

The relative pronoun *quoi* answers to the pronoun *which*, used with reference to the sense of what has been said before, and is generally preceded by the indefinite articles *de* or *à*; thus,

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| De quoi | of which  |
| à quoi  | to which; |

or by any of these prepositions,

Après | avant | avec | sur | en.

The pronoun *que*, besides its being the accusative case of the relative *qui*, is also often used instead of *de qui* or *à qui* for both genders and numbers, whenever there comes immediately before it the genitive or dative of a pronoun personal:

C'est

C'est de vous qu'on | it is you they are  
parle | speaking of;

instead of | De qui *or* dont on parle.

C'est à vous qu'on | it is you they make  
s'adresse | application to;

instead of | à qui on s'adresse.

The pronouns relative *qui* and *que* must be repeated in French before each verb, of which *qui* is the nominative case and *que* the accusative:

Voici un homme qui | here is a man who eats  
mange peu et qui | little and drinks very  
boit beaucoup | much

Voilà une femme que | here is a woman  
je vois souvent et | whom I often see  
que je ne voudrois | and I would never  
jamais voir | see again.

The pronouns relative *who*, *which*, or *that*, are sometimes expressed in English, and at other times only understood in the accusative case; but in French, wherein we very seldom permit any thing understood, the pronoun relative *que* must be always expressed:

Nôtre

|                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Nôtre ami que vous | our friend you saw last    |
| avez vu la semaine | week is dead               |
| dernière, est mort |                            |
| La lettre que vous | the letter you are writing |
| écrivez, n'est pas | is not polite.             |
| polie              |                            |

The adverb *où*, which literally means *where*, is used sometimes instead of the dative case of the pronouns relative, and also instead of them when they are governed by any of these prepositions;

At | in | into | with:

the adverb *où* then is used for both genders and numbers of nouns denoting time, place, condition, disposition, and design:

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Voilà la maison où il | behold the house to  |
| a ajouté trois cham-  | which he added three |
| bres                  | rooms                |
| Le siècle où nous vi- | the age in which we  |
| vons, est le plus     | live is the most en- |
| éclairé               | lightened:           |

*où* in the first instance stands for *à la quelle*, and in the second for *dans le quel*.

The

The pronoun relative *le* not only supplies the place of nouns substantive masculine, as the pronoun *la* (her) supplies that of the nouns feminine, when both perform an office common to pronouns properly so called; but it stands also as a neuter supplying pronoun with reference to the sense of the whole sentence which went before in the discourse:

|                                                                   |                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vous êtes bien riche,<br>et moi je ne le suis<br>pas              | you are very rich, and<br>I am not                          |
| On me dit qu'elle m'a<br>trompé, mais je ne<br>peux pas le croire | I am told she deceived<br>me, but I cannot<br>believe that. |

The English pronoun *it* has two meanings, and therefore is rendered into French by two different pronouns, with this distinction: when it is used as representing the subject of the verb with respect to inanimate things, as *he* and *she* are used with respect to persons, it is a pronoun personal, translated by *il* for the



the masculine, and *elle* for the feminine.

Thus in speaking of a book, we say,

Il est bien imprimé, | it is well printed

and of a house,

Elle est mal bâtie | it is badly built;

and *it*, when used as relating to the object of the verb with respect to inanimate things, as *him* and *her* are used with respect to persons, is a pronoun relative, expressed in French by *le* for the masculine, and *la* for the feminine.

Thus in speaking of a coach, we say,

Je ne peux pas le | I cannot lend it  
prêter,

and of a watch,

Je ne veux pas la | I will not sell it.  
vendre

The pronoun relative *dont* must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a subject or nominative case, either noun or pronoun to a verb immediately following, or by an impersonal verb attended by another verb, and the object or accusative case coming last:

|                                             |                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Le ciel dont le secours<br>est neceffaire   | heaven, whose affift-<br>ance is neceffary!          |
| Le ciel dont il faut<br>implorer le secours | heaven, whose affift-<br>ance must be im-<br>plored! |

We therefore cannot fay,

Le ciel dont fans le secours, *or* fans dont le  
secours nous ne pouvons reuffir;

becaufe in the first instance *dont* is not immediately followed by a noun or verb, and in the fecond it does not immediately follow its grammatical antecedent, but upon fuch occasions the pronouns *de qui*, or *du quel*, must be ufed:

|                                                                                    |                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Le ciel fans le secours<br>du quel, <i>or</i> de qui<br>nous ne pouvons<br>reuffir | heaven, without whose<br>affiftance we cannot<br>fucceed! |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|

Although the relative pronouns *dont* and *de qui* may be ufed indifferently in fome instances, without contradicting any exprefs rule, there is this diftinction to be made in the application of them to perfons, that *de qui* expreffes more  
aply

aptly the ablative, and *dont* the genitive. Therefore, if I receive by a man a letter, written to me by another, I must say,

|                     |  |                      |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|
| L'homme de qui j'ai |  | the man by whom I    |
| reçu la lettre      |  | received the letter; |

and if I mention only the man who wrote such a letter, I must speak thus;

|                   |  |                        |
|-------------------|--|------------------------|
| L'homme dont j'ai |  | the man from whom      |
| reçu la lettre    |  | I received the letter. |

The particle relative *en*, which has commonly the form of the genitive, has also sometimes that of the ablative:

|                      |  |                    |
|----------------------|--|--------------------|
| Venez vous de Paris? |  | do you come from   |
| j'en suis venu hier  |  | Paris? I came from |
| au soir              |  | thence last night. |

The particle relative *y*, which generally refers to a place, is used sometimes instead of the pronouns personal in the dative case:

|                    |  |                    |  |         |           |
|--------------------|--|--------------------|--|---------|-----------|
| à lui              |  | to him             |  | à eux   | } to them |
| à elle             |  | to her             |  | à elles |           |
| Quand un homme est |  | when a man is dead |  |         |           |
| mort on n'y pense  |  | we think no more   |  |         |           |
| plus               |  | of him             |  |         |           |

Pensez

|                     |  |                      |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|
| Pensez vous à vôtre |  | do you think of your |
| bonne amie? je n'y  |  | dear friend? I think |
| penſe que trop      |  | too much of her.     |

The particle *y* is uſed in the firſt ſentence inſtead of *à lui*, and in the ſecond inſtead of *à elle*.

Befides, the pronouns relative *le*, *la*, *les*, and the particles *en* and *y*, muſt be repeated before each verb:

|                        |  |                      |
|------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Je le connois et je le |  | I know and ſee him   |
| vois quelque fois      |  | ſometimes            |
| Il la frappa, et la    |  | he ſtruck and turned |
| chaffa                 |  | her out:             |

But we muſt except the caſe in which the verb is of the ſame ſignification with or compoſed of the firſt, or only denotes a repetition of the action:

|                          |  |                     |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Elle le fait, defait, et |  | ſhe makes, unmakes, |
| refait encore            |  | and makes it again. |

Moreover, as the pronouns and particles relative are conſtrued in French in the ſame manner as the conjunctive, I cannot avoid repeating here what we have

Z

obſerved



observed concerning the construction of the conjunctive pronouns, since the relative follow the very same rules, viz.

Although the pronouns relative, | *le, la, les,*  
and the particles relative | *en and y*  
are commonly put in French before verbs, unless the verb be used in the second person singular, and the first and second plural of the imperative mood; this exception however is to be observed in affirmative sentences only:

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Achetez-le      | buy it              |
| Payons-les tous | let us pay them all |
| Vendez-la ici   | sell it here        |
| Parlez-en à lui | speak of it to him  |
| Allons-y        | let us go there.    |

For when any pronoun or particle relative is used in negative sentences, it must be put immediately before the verb, even through all persons of the imperative, without the least exception:

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ne l'achetez pas       | do not buy it           |
| Ne les payons pas tous | let us not pay them all |
| Ne la vendez pas ici   | do not sell it here     |

N'en

|                       |  |                              |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------------|
| N'en parlez pas à lui |  | do not speak of it to<br>him |
| N'y allons pas        |  | let us not go there.         |

*Of the PRONOUNS IMPROPER.*

The pronoun *quiconque*, which answers to the pronouns *whoever*, or *any body*, is sometimes the object of the one verb at the same time that it is the subject of another:

|                        |  |                        |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Il a donné ordre d'ar- |  | he gave orders to stop |
| reter quiconque pas-   |  | any body that goes     |
| sera par là            |  | that way:              |

At other times it serves as the only subject of two verbs:

|                     |  |                     |
|---------------------|--|---------------------|
| Quiconque a étudié  |  | whoever has studied |
| Cicéron doit con-   |  | Cicero must know    |
| noître la véritable |  | the true eloquence. |
| eloquence           |  |                     |

The pronoun *chaque* implies a person or thing as considered separately from every other, and is rendered into English by *each* or *every*:

Chaque science a ses principes | every or each science has its rudiments.

The pronoun *chacun*, compounded of *chaque* and *un*, is said both of persons and things, and, signifying every person or thing, answers to the pronouns *every* or *each*, and sometimes *every one*.

The pronoun *tout* is variously construed. It is an adjective, signifying *all* and *the whole*, and always comes before the article of its noun substantive, besides the articles indefinite *de*, *à*, *de*, which it requires before itself:

|                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| Tout le jardin    | all the garden       |
| De tout le jardin | of all the garden    |
| à tout le jardin  | to all the garden    |
| Tout le jardin    | all the garden       |
| De tout le jardin | from all the garden. |

It signifies likewise *any*, *every*, or *each*, and then its noun has no article;

Tout homme est mortel | every man is mortal.

The pronoun *tout* construed with some verbs, particularly the auxiliary *être*, is used without a substantive, being itself taken

taken substantively, and as such is sometimes preceded by the article,

Le tout a été fait | all has been done.

It signifies *every* in all the following and similar expressions:

|                     |  |               |
|---------------------|--|---------------|
| Tous les jours      |  | Tous les mois |
| Toutes les semaines |  | Tous les ans; |

in which the noun is used singularly in English;

|            |  |             |
|------------|--|-------------|
| Every day  |  | Every month |
| Every week |  | Every year. |

The pronoun *tout* is also used before an adjective followed by the particle *que*, and then it is rendered into English by *although*, or *however*, or by *as*, repeated with an adjective between, or only coming after an adjective. In this signification it is indeclinable; except (which is worth observing) when the adjective feminine, before which it comes, begins with a consonant; for then it admits of a feminine termination, and if the adjective



jective be plural, it may then be plural also. But when the adjective, though feminine and plural, begins with a vowel, the pronoun *tout* remains indeclinable:

|                                                                         |                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tout philosophe qu'il<br>est il juge souvent<br>de travers              | though he is a philoso-<br>pher, he often judges<br>wrong          |
| Tout ignorant qu'il<br>est il a beaucoup de<br>jugement                 | ignorant as he is, he<br>has a great deal of<br>judgment           |
| Toutes laides qu'elles<br>sont, elles sont bien<br>fieres               | ugly as they are, they<br>are very proud                           |
| Tout ètonnante qu'est<br>cette nouvelle, on<br>ne peut pas en<br>douter | however surprising<br>this news is, we can-<br>not doubt about it. |

The pronoun *tout* is likewise used in the sense of *quite*:

Elle est tout abatue | she is quite low spirited.

The pronoun *quelque* signifies an indeterminate number, and answers to the pronoun *some*:

J'ai quelques parens | I have some relations  
dans cette ville | in this town.

But

But if the substantive, joined with the pronoun *quelque*, be followed by the particle *que*, then *quelque* and *que* signify an indeterminate quality or quantity, and answer to the pronoun *whatever*:

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Quelque merite qu'on | whatever merit a man  |
| aît, on ne reussit   | has, he succeeds but  |
| gueres sans protec-  | little without a pro- |
| teur                 | teCTOR.               |

The English pronoun *whatever*, or *whatsoever*, is a compound, which is sometimes separated into two words by another intervening word, as,

In what condition soever I be.

The French pronoun *quelque* is also separated into two words, (thus, *quel* and *que*) but without any word between them as in English, and *quel* in such a case must agree in gender and number with the following pronoun, which comes before the verb, or with the noun which comes after it, and the verb is governed in the conjunctive mood by *que*:

Quels

Quels que puissent être | whatever your designs  
vos desseins | may be;

which answers to the same as,

Quelques desseins que vous puissiez avoir.

The English pronoun *whatever* or *whatsoever* is moreover rendered by *quelconque*, and sometimes by *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*:

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Il n'y a raison quel- | there is no reason    |
| conque qui puisse le  | whatever that can     |
| convaincre            | convince him          |
| Tout ce qui est grand | whatever is large and |
| et gros n'est pas le  | big is not always     |
| plus précieux         | the most precious     |
| Tout ce que vous      | whatever you please.  |
| voudrez               |                       |

From *quel* and *que* are formed these two other pronouns improper:

*Quique ce soit*, and *quelque ce soit*.

The former is said of persons, and the latter of things.

The pronoun *quique ce soit* answers to *whosoever*, or *any body whatever*:

Qui

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Quique ce soit qui  | whosoever it be who  |
| vous parle pensez à | speaks to you, think |
| ce qu'on vous dit   | of what is said.     |

Where we see that it takes the pronoun relative *qui* between it and the verb, in conformity to its original signification; and when its verb is attended by a negative word, it signifies *no man*, or *no body at all*:

|                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Quique ce soit ne m'- | no man, <i>or</i> , no body |
| en a pas parlé        | has spoken to me            |
|                       | about it.                   |

The pronoun *quelque ce soit*, without a negation, signifies *any thing whatever*, and with a negative *nothing at all*; but in both cases *quel* is separated from *que ce soit* by some words:

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Dans quel état que ce | in any condition what-  |
| soit                  | ever                    |
| Il n'est arrivé quel  | no misfortune at all is |
| malheur que ce soit   | happened.               |

The pronoun *quelqu'un*, compounded of *quelque* and *un*, answers to the English pronoun *some* when used in a substantively



tively manner. It is sometimes used absolutely, and then means *any body*:

Si je vois quelqu'un | if I see any body:

But generally with reference to a noun which comes after with *de*, or one which has preceded, and is represented by the relative particle *en*:

|                                                |  |                                |
|------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| J'aperçois quelques-uns de vos nouveaux livres |  | I see some of your new books   |
| Voulez vous m'en prêter quelqu'un?             |  | will you lend me some of them? |

The improper pronoun *some*, repeated in English in a sentence, is expressed in French by *les uns* in the first part of the sentence, and *les autres* in the other:

|                                                                |  |                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|
| Les uns aiment l'application et les autres les divertissemens. |  | Some like application and some amusements |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|

The English pronoun *any body* is sometimes translated by *quique ce soit*, or *tout le monde*:

|                                       |  |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| Tout le monde vous montrera le chemin |  | any body will shew you the way. |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|

The pronoun *personne*, which answers to the pronoun *no body*, is seldom used but with verbs, as their subject or object, attended or preceded by a negative:

|                     |  |                    |
|---------------------|--|--------------------|
| Personne ne le fait |  | no body knows that |
| Je ne vois personne |  | I see no body.     |

Though the pronoun *personne* be said of both genders, yet it requires the adjective or pronoun which refers to it, in the masculine gender, even in speaking of a woman:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Personne n'est si mal- |  | no body is so unhappy |
| heureux qu'elle        |  | as she:               |

But if *personne* be a noun substantive, it requires the adjective in the feminine.

The French pronouns improper,

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Nul, pas un, and aucun |  | no body, not one, no, |
|                        |  | none;                 |

though they are negative words of themselves, require another negative, like *personne*, before the verb:

|                    |  |                        |
|--------------------|--|------------------------|
| Pas un ne le croit |  | not one believes that. |
|--------------------|--|------------------------|

But

But we must except from this rule sentences of interrogation and doubt:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ya-t-il aucun de vous |  | is here any among you |
| qui le sache?         |  | who knows that.       |

The pronoun *aucun*, which strictly signifies *any*, when used without a negative in interrogative sentences, as in the last, may be also expressed by *quelqu'un*, when the pronouns *aucun* and *nul* are followed by the genitive case, or by a substantive either expressed or understood, they follow the gender of the genitive or a substantive, but not the number, and they are to be considered as adjectives when joined to a substantive.

The pronouns *l'un et l'autre*, translated by *the one and the other*, or by *both*, always requires the verb in the plural number, and may be used also after the verb, which then will have the personal pronoun before it, though not expressed in English:

|                      |  |                        |
|----------------------|--|------------------------|
| L'un et l'autre sont |  | both are returned from |
| revenus de France    |  | France                 |

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ils sont revenus de    |  | the one and the other |
| France l'un et l'autre |  | are returned from     |
|                        |  | France.               |

The pronoun *l'un l'autre* answers to the pronoun *one another*, and is used to express the mutual action of two objects (each other), and consequently is always construed with a reciprocal verb, which requires the conjunctive pronoun *se*.

The first of these two words is always in the nominative case, and the other is declined with a definite article:

|                         |  |                       |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ils sont ennemis l'un   |  | they are enemies one  |
| à l'autre               |  | to another            |
| Ils se souviennent l'un |  | they remember one an- |
| de l'autre              |  | other, or each other. |

The pronoun *ni l'un ni l'autre* is rendered by *neither the one nor the other*, or else by *neither* alone, and will have the verb in the singular number, if it come before, and in the plural if it come after it; because in such a case the verb has for its nominative a personal pronoun



pronoun in the plural, which comprehends in its signification the two persons or things expressed by *ni l'un ni l'autre*:

|                                                   |                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ni l'un ni l'autre a<br>étudié sa leçon           | neither the one nor the<br>other have studied<br>their lesson |
| Ils n'ont étudié leur<br>leçon ni l'un ni l'autre | neither of them have<br>studied their lesson.                 |

Where we see that when *ni l'un ni l'autre* comes after the verb, we make use of the particle negative *ne* before it, because the pronoun personal *ils* is its principal subject.

The word *même*, when it is neither an adverb nor a pronominal word, is a pronoun improper, which answers to the pronoun *same*, and relates to some nouns expressed or understood.



## CHAP. IV.

### *Of the* VERB.

**A**NY verb whatever must agree in number and person with the noun or pronoun in the nominative case, denoting the subject in active and neuter verbs, and the object in passive.

Many nouns substantive, or pronouns, being in the singular number and in the nominative case, will have the verb in the plural.

However, when two nouns singular are separated by the disjunctive conjunction *ou*, (or), the verb of the first noun is understood, and that which is expressed, is governed by the second noun in the singular:

|                    |  |                          |
|--------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Ou son père, ou sa |  | either his father or his |
| mère reviendra     |  | mother will come         |
|                    |  | back.                    |

And

And when the last noun is preceded by the conjunction *mais*, (but) the verb must agree with it, though it be in the singular number, and there be many nouns plural before:

|                        |  |                        |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Non seulement ses      |  | not only her hands and |
| mains et ses jambes,   |  | legs are swelled, but  |
| mais aussi sa tête est |  | even her head.         |
| enflée                 |  |                        |

Collective nouns, such as *people* and *multitude* (which, though used in the singular, represent many objects to our understanding) require in English the verb in the plural number; as,

The people of this town are wise and sober:  
But in French they will have the verb in the singular number;

Le peuple de cette ville est sage et sobre;  
Yet we must except these three nouns only,

|                  |  |                 |
|------------------|--|-----------------|
| Une infinité     |  | Un grand nombre |
| Un nombre infini |  |                 |

which having after them another noun  
in

in the plural, (that they govern in the genitive case) require the verb in the plural also :

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Un grand nombre de     |  | a great many soldiers |
| soldats y ont été tués |  | have been killed      |
|                        |  | there.                |

The noun *la plupart*, (the most part) whether used alone, or followed by another noun in the genitive case, requires likewise the verb in the plural:

|                       |  |                    |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------|
| La plupart s'en alle- |  | the most part went |
| rent                  |  | away:              |

But when the above nouns come before a noun singular in the genitive case, the verb is to be put, as usual, in the singular:

|                                |  |                               |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Une infinité, <i>or</i> la plu |  | an infinite number, <i>or</i> |
| part de ce peuple est          |  | the most part of these        |
| ignorante                      |  | people are ignorant;          |

And this proceeds from this evident reason, that it is not the noun collective, expressing multitude, which determines the number of the verb, but the second noun which is in the genitive.

A a

When



When the subject of the verb is the pronoun relative *qui*, the verb must agree in number and person with the noun or pronoun personal to which the relative *qui* refers:

|                     |  |                       |
|---------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ce n'étoit pas nous |  | It was not we who did |
| qui faisons cela    |  | that.                 |

The subject in a sentence, as we have observed, generally goes before the verb; but it is used after only in the following occasions:

*First*; In a short sentence used by a parenthesis, and an accessory member to the chief sentence:

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Personne, dit un au- |  | no body, says an au- |
| teur, n'est content  |  | thor, is contented   |
| de son état          |  | with his own con-    |
|                      |  | dition.              |

*2dly*; In asking questions, if the subject of the verb is a pronoun personal:

Parlez vous François? | do you speak French?

*3dly*; In the narrative discourse, when the verb has no object, or accusative case:

Sur

|                    |  |                      |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| Sur cela partit le |  | whereupon the Prince |
| Prince             |  | departed.            |

4<sup>thly</sup>; When the object is represented by the pronoun conjunctive *se*, or by the relative *que*, or by the adverb *où*:

|                         |  |                         |
|-------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| à notre arrivée se      |  | at our arrival a pretty |
| présenta une jolie      |  | woman appeared          |
| femme                   |  |                         |
| L'argent que paya son   |  | the money which his     |
| père                    |  | father paid             |
| La prison où fut mis le |  | the prison where the    |
| coupable                |  | guilty person was       |
|                         |  | put.                    |

5<sup>thly</sup>; When the improper pronoun *tel*, or *telle*, comes before the verb:

|                      |  |                        |
|----------------------|--|------------------------|
| Tel parut à ses yeux |  | such appeared the lus- |
| l'éclat de sa beauté |  | tre of her beauty in   |
|                      |  | his eyes.              |

6<sup>thly</sup>; When the adverb *à peine* (hardly) comes before the verb:

*à peine* pouvoit-il parler | he could hardly speak.

When a noun and pronoun, or many nouns and pronouns, meet together in a sentence with the verb, as its virtual sub-

ject, it must besides have before it for its immediate grammatical subject, or nominative case, a pronoun personal of the plural number, comprehending in its signification the nouns or pronouns which are to be put in opposition in the same case with it. Moreover, the verb ought to agree with the pronoun personal coming immediately before it, and the many pronouns as its principal subject are to be expressed by the pronouns personal

Moi, toi, lui, *or* elle, nous, vous, eux, *or* elles, and may come (as well as the nouns connected with them) either before or after the verb:

|                                               |                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Vous et moi nous<br>sommes d'accord           | you and I agree toge-<br>ther              |
| Lui et ma soeur ils ont<br>appris le François | he and my sister have<br>learnt the French |
| Toi et elle vous restez<br>à la maison        | thou and she shall stay<br>at home.        |

Whenever in a sentence two verbs come together, joined by the copulative conjunction

junction *et*, (and) great care must be taken (especially if they govern different cases of nouns or pronouns) to give to each of them its proper case, by placing a noun after the first verb, and joining to the second a pronoun in the case it governs, or repeating the pronoun before each verb agreeably to the regimen they require; therefore we say in French,

|                                                                                |                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cela plut au Prince, et<br>le charma, <i>or</i> cela lui<br>plut, et le charma | this pleased and charm-<br>ed the Prince, <i>or</i> this<br>pleased and charmed<br>him, |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

instead of saying as in English,

Cela plut et charma le Prince, *or* cela lui plut  
et charma;

because the verb *plaire* governs the dative case, and the verb *charmer* the accusative.

### *Of the GOVERNMENT and REGIMEN of FRENCH VERBS.*

Active verbs require before them a noun or pronoun in the nominative case,

A a 3                      denoting



denoting the person or thing that is the subject of the action expressed by the verb, and are always attended by a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, denoting the person or thing that is the object of the same action:

|                   |  |                    |
|-------------------|--|--------------------|
| Madame apprend le |  | my Lady learns the |
| François          |  | French.            |

Beside the noun or pronoun which active verbs require after them as their object, they may be also attended by another noun or pronoun in the dative case, denoting the end of the object. And as the word expressive of the object is preceded by one of the articles definite *le, la, les*, the other word denoting its end always requires either one of the articles definite *au, à la, à l'*, and *aux*, or the indefinite article *à*:

|                         |  |                        |
|-------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Il enseigne le François |  | he teaches the French  |
| à la soeur de Ma-       |  | to my Lady's sister    |
| dame                    |  |                        |
| Elle envoya la lettre   |  | she sent the letter to |
| à son frère             |  | her brother:           |

But

But we must except from this rule the pronouns conjunctive,

Me | te | se | lui | nous | vous | leur,  
which require no article.

Passive verbs require before them a noun or pronoun in the nominative case, denoting the person or thing that is the object of the action expressed by the verb, and are always attended by another noun or pronoun in the ablative case, denoting the subject of the verb, and consequently expressing the person or thing by which the action is done:

|                                      |  |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Elle est aimée de tous<br>ses parens |  | she is loved by all her<br>relations |
| Il a été tué par un<br>voleur        |  | he has been killed by<br>a thief:    |

Hence it plainly appears, that passive verbs require in French the indefinite article *de*, or the preposition *par* before the next noun or pronoun used in the same occasions as the prepositions *from* or *by* in English.

But

But the article *de*, and the preposition *par*, are not used indiscriminately after passive verbs.

When the passive verb expresses a mere operation of the mind, it is followed by the indefinite article *de*:

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Vous êtes souhaité de | you are wished for by |
| tous vos amis         | all your friends:     |

and when it expresses a natural action, or one which partakes of the sentiments of the soul as well as of the movements of the body, it is then followed by the preposition *par*:

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| La ville de Rome fut | the town of Rome was |
| batie par Romulus    | built by Romulus.    |

Neuter verbs are always preceded by a noun or pronoun in the nominative case, denoting the person or thing that is or does an action. But as neuter verbs express nothing but the being of a person or thing, or an action remaining in the subject that produces it, they are never attended by any noun or pronoun, because

because such an action does not pass over another person or thing:

|                      |  |                     |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Mon père mourut le   |  | my father died last |
| mois dernier, et ma  |  | month, and my mo-   |
| mère est bien malade |  | ther is very ill    |
| Vous écrivez bien    |  | you write well.     |

Besides, as few verbs are used in French without having before the next infinitive either of these three prepositions,

De | à | pour,

which all answer to the note *to* coming before the infinitive of the English verbs; the principal circumstance to be attended to in this matter is, the accidents of the infinitive of the French verbs with respect to its being governed by a preposition, and to the distinguishing of the cases wherein one of the above prepositions is to be preferred to the others; and as this is a point determined as well by nouns substantive and adjective as by verbs, they will methodically be all included in this treatise as follows:—

A COL-



## A COLLECTION

Of the active verbs which require the preposition *de* before the next Infinitive.

|            | To         |            | To                 |
|------------|------------|------------|--------------------|
| Affecter   | affect     | Decharger  | discharge          |
| Affliger   | afflict    | Deliberer  | deliberate         |
| Chagriner  | vex        | Refoudre   | resolve            |
| Defoler    | desolate   | Conclure   | conclude           |
| Arreter    | stop       | Desesperer | despair            |
| Retenir    | restrain   | Degouter   | disgust            |
| Empecher   | hinder     | Differer   | put off            |
| Detourner  | deter from | Forcer     | force              |
| Craindre   | fear       | Dire       | say <i>or</i> tell |
| Attendrir  | soften     | Divertir   | amuse              |
| Blamer     | blame      | Rejouir    | rejoice            |
| Reprendre  | rebuke     | ècrire     | write              |
| Censurer   | censure    | Mander     | send word          |
| Gronder    | scold      | Effrayer   | affright           |
| Cesser     | cease      | Exempter   | exempt             |
| Charger    | charge     | Dispenser  | dispense           |
| Ordonner   | order      | Troubler   | disturb            |
| Defendre   | forbid     | Excuser    | excuse             |
| Choisir    | chuse      | Exiger     | require            |
| Avertir    | warn       | Feindre    | feign              |
| Conseiller | advise     | Firir      | finish             |
|            |            |            | Inspirer           |

|           | To          |           | To        |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Inspirer  | inspire     | Conjurer  | conjure   |
| Jurer     | swear       | Supplier  | befeech   |
| Justifier | justify     | Presser   | urge      |
| Louer     | praise      | Prescrire | prescribe |
| Mediter   | meditate    | Presumer  | presume   |
| Notifier  | notify      | Promettre | promise   |
| Negliger  | neglect     | Professer | profess   |
| Omettre   | omit        | Redouter  | dread     |
| Offrir    | offer       | Refuser   | refuse    |
| Oublier   | forget      | Remercier | thank     |
| Pardonner | pardon      | Reprocher | reproach  |
| Permettre | permit      | Proposer  | propose   |
| Persuader | persuade    | Suffire   | suffice   |
| Plaindre  | pity        | Suggerer  | suggest   |
| Prier     | pray or beg | Tromper   | deceive.  |

|             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| Approuver   | approve     |
| Commander   | command     |
| Convaincre  | convince    |
| Decourager  | discourage  |
| Determiner  | determine   |
| Achever     | make an end |
| Embarasser  | embarrass   |
| Contraindre | constrain   |
| Soupçonner  | suspect     |
| Surprendre  | surprize    |
| Géner       | make uneasy |

The

The following verbs (for the most part neuter or reflected) require likewise the preposition *de* before the next infinitive or noun.

|              | To        |              | To         |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
| Abuser       | abuse     | Se moquer    | mock       |
| Convenir     | agree to  | Rire         | laugh      |
| Jouir        | enjoy     | Se rejouir   | rejoice    |
| Parler       | speak     | Se repentir  | repent     |
| Medire       | traduce   | Se soucier   | care       |
| Menacer      | threaten  | Se vanter    | boast      |
| Manquer      | want      | Se hâter     | hasten     |
| Profiter     | improve   | S'inquieter  | be uneasy  |
| Hesiter      | hesitate  | Se mesier    | mistrust   |
| Tacher       | endeavour | Se defier    | distrust   |
| S'abstenir   | abstain   | Se saisir    | seize upon |
| S'informer   | enquire   | S'étonner    | wonder     |
| Se garder    | take heed | Se plaindre  | complain   |
| Se meler     | meddle    | Se piquer    | pretend to |
| S'apercevoir |           | perceive     |            |
| Se souvenir  |           | remember     |            |
| S'empêcher   |           | forbear      |            |
| Se dépêcher  |           | make haste   |            |
| S'approcher  |           | draw near    |            |
| Etre surpris |           | be surprised |            |
| Se servir    |           | make use of  |            |
|              |           | S'acquiescer |            |

|            |                     |
|------------|---------------------|
| S'acquiter | To accomplish       |
| S'ennuyer  | grow weary          |
| Se flater  | flatter one's self. |

These impersonal verbs,

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| Il appartient | it belongs      |
| Il convient   | it is proper    |
| Il sied bien  | it becomes well |
| Il depend     | it depends      |
| Il plait      | it pleases,     |

require after them an infinitive preceded by the preposition *de*.

The following adjectives, commonly construed with the verb *être*, govern the infinitive of French verbs preceded by the preposition *de*:

|           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Capable   | capable   | Certain   | certain   |
| Incapable | incapable | Incertain | uncertain |
| Content   | contented | Ravi      | overjoyed |
| Curieux   | curious   | Charmé    | glad      |
| Digne     | worthy    | Faché     | forry     |
| Indigne   | unworthy  | Las       | tired     |
| Satisfait | fatisfied | Ennuyé    | weary     |
| Sur       | fure      | Plein     | full      |

The



The following nouns substantive, chiefly construed with the verb *avoir*, without any article before them, require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive:

|            |         |          |             |
|------------|---------|----------|-------------|
| Permission | leave   | Lieu     | room        |
| Envie      | mind    | Raison   | reason      |
| Coutume    | use     | Soin     | care        |
| Besoin     | need    | Droit    | right       |
| Dessin     | design  | Tort     | wrong       |
| Sujet      | subject | Occasion | opportunity |

as likewise all nouns construed with other verbs, either with or without an article, provided they do not signify or imply inclination, difficulty, reluctance, aptness, fitness, or unfitness.

The following list of nouns substantive, requiring the preposition *de* before the next infinitive, has been thought useful. (They are alphabetically laid down for greater ease in referring to them:)

|          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| Ambition | ambition | Avantage  | advantage |
| Art      | art      | Attention | attention |

Avis

|           |             |            |            |
|-----------|-------------|------------|------------|
| Avis      | advise      | Façon      | way, man-  |
| Ardeur    | ardor       |            | ner        |
| Amitié    | friendship  | Force      | strength   |
| Amour     | love        | Grace      | grace      |
| Adresse   | skill       | Gloire     | glory      |
| Action    | action      | Hardiesse  | boldness   |
| Autorité  | authority   | Hasard     | chance     |
| Bonté     | goodness    | Habitude   | habit      |
| Bonheur   | happiness   | Habilité   | dexterity  |
| Conseil   | counsel     | Honte      | shame      |
| Choix     | choice      | Honneteté  | kindness   |
| Coeur     | heart       | Impuden-   | impudence  |
| Courage   | courage     | ce         |            |
| Confusion | confusion   | Impruden-  | imprudence |
| Constance | constancy   | ce         |            |
| Curiosité | curiosity   | Insolence  | insolence  |
| Chagrin   | grief       | Intention  | intention  |
| Désespoir | despair     | Inquietude | uneasiness |
| Depit     | despite     | Joie       | joy        |
| Désir     | desire      | Jugement   | judgment   |
| Danger    | danger      | Justice    | justice    |
| Esperance | hope        | Liberté    | liberty    |
| Esprit    | wit, genius | Loisir     | leisure    |
| Embaras   | trouble     | Motif      | motive     |
| Envie     | mind        | Moyen      | means      |
| Facilité  | facility    | Malice     | malice     |
| Faveur    | favour      | Malheur    | misfortune |
| Fermeté   | firmness    | Maitre     | master     |

Maniere

|            |            |          |          |
|------------|------------|----------|----------|
| Maniere    | way        | Plaifir  | pleasure |
| Nature     | nature     | Rage     | rage     |
| Neceffité  | necelfity  | Rufe     | cunning  |
| Orgueil    | pride      | Rifque   | risk     |
| Obligation | obligation | Sageffe  | wifdom   |
| Ordre      | order      | Sens     | fenfè    |
| Pouvoir    | power      | Souci    | care     |
| Peine      | concern    | Temerité | rafhnefs |
| Precaution | precaution | Vanité   | vanity   |
| Patience   | patience   | Volonté  | will     |
| Paflion    | paflion    | Vice     | vice     |

And here it will not be improper to obferve, that any noun fubftantive or adjective whatever, derived from a verb, requires the fame preposition before the next infinitive or noun as the primitive verb.

Thus the adjectives, or rather participles adjectively ufed, for instance,

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| Etonné     | aftonifhed |
| And Refolu | refolved,  |

govern, the former the genitive cafe of nouns, and the latter the dative, and both the preposition *de* before the infinitive,

nitive, because the same regimens belong to the verbs *étonner*, (to astonish) and *resoudre*, (to resolve.) It is the same with substantives; therefore the nouns Force | obligation | demande | presumption, and such like, must have the same regimen with their primitive verbs

Forcer | obliger | demander | presumer.

The verbs *jouer*, *toucher*, *pincer*, (to play) when meant of musical instruments, govern the definite article in the genitive case:

|                      |  |                           |
|----------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Jouer de la flute    |  | to play on the flute      |
| Toucher du claveffin |  | to play on the harpsicord |
| Pincer de la harpe   |  | to play on the harp.      |

The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive:

|          | To    |           | To         |
|----------|-------|-----------|------------|
| Avoir    | have  | Apprendre | learn      |
| Etre     | be    | Enseigner | teach      |
| Aimer    | like  | Autoriser | authorize  |
| Admettre | admit | Chercher  | seek       |
|          | B b   |           | Contribuer |



|            | To          |           | To       |
|------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| Contribuer | contribute  | Employer  | employ   |
| Dépenser   | spend       | Engager   | engage   |
| Demeurer   | stay, tarry | Exercer   | exercise |
| Tarder     | delay       | Exhorter  | exhort   |
| Destiner   | design      | Incliner  | incline  |
| Donner     | give        | Perdre    | lose     |
| Disposer   | dispose     | Presenter | present  |
| Accoutumer |             | accustom. |          |
| Condamner  |             | condemn   |          |
| Encourager |             | encourage |          |

The following verbs (for the most part neuter) require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive or noun:

|           | To        |            | To       |
|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|
| Applaudir | applaud   | Pretendre  | aim at   |
| Aider     | help      | Penser     | think    |
| Nuire     | hurt      | Renoncer   | renounce |
| Se plaire | please    | Ressembler | resemble |
| Deplaire  | displease | Rester     | remain   |
| Parvenir  | attain    | S'arreter  | stop at  |
| Persister | persist   | Se fier    | trust    |
| Pourvoir  | provide   | S'opposer  | oppose   |
| Procéder  | proceed   | Resister   | resist   |

The verbs *plaire*, (to please)  
*pardonner*, (to pardon) and  
*suffire*, (to suffice)

take the preposition *à* before a noun, and the preposition *de* before an infinitive.

The following adjectives, construed with the verb *être*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, as likewise all nouns substantive, and adjectives signifying inclination, fitness, or unfitness; all which will have either the article indefinite *à*, or one of the definite articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, and *aux* before nouns:

|           |           |            |            |
|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|
| Adroit    | dexterous | Prompt     | quick      |
| Agréable  | agreeable | Habile     | able       |
| Admirable | admirable | Lent       | slow       |
| Ardent    | eager     | Affidu     | assiduous  |
| Beau      | handsome  | Affreux    | frightful  |
| Bon       | good      | Horrible   | horrible   |
| Diligent  | diligent  | Terrible   | terrible   |
| Doux      | sweet     | Hardi      | bold       |
| Aisé      | mild      | Honnête    | honest     |
| Difficile | difficult | Civil      | civil      |
| Exact     | exact     | Incivil    | uncivil    |
| Incliné   | inclined  | Le premier | the first  |
| Porté     | fond      | Le second  | the second |
| Sujet     | subject   | Le dernier | the last   |
| Propre    | fit       | Seul       | only.      |
| Pret      | ready     | Meilleur   | better     |

There are several French verbs which sometimes take the preposition *de*, and sometimes the preposition *à*, before the next infinitive, and in some particular instances omit them both.

These six verbs,

|           | To    |           | To        |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-----------|
| Couter    | cost  | Essayer   | try       |
| Manquer   | fail  | Forcer    | force     |
| Commencer | begin | Continuer | continue, |

take indifferently the preposition *de* or *à* before the next infinitive.

The verb *contraindre*, when used actively, takes indifferently the preposition *de* or *à* before the next infinitive. But when it is used in the passive voice, it is always attended by the preposition *de*.

The verb *obliger*, having double meaning in the active voice when it signifies *forcer*, (to force) requires the preposition *à* before the next infinitive; and when it means *faire la politesse*, (to do a kindness) it

it requires the preposition *de*. But in the passive voice it is always attended by the preposition *de*.

The following verbs will have no preposition before the next infinitive:

|            | To       |            | To          |
|------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| Aller      | go       | Observer   | observe     |
| Venir      | come     | Paroître   | appear      |
| Envoyer    | send     | Sembler    | seem        |
| Declarer   | declare  | Voir       | see         |
| Dire       | say      | Regarder   | behold      |
| Affurer    | assure   | S'imaginer | fancy       |
| Rapporter  | report   | Faire      | make, do    |
| Affirmer   | affirm   | Laisser    | leave, let  |
| Avouer     | own      | Daigner    | be pleased  |
| Confesser  | confess  | Pretendre  | pretend     |
| Deposer    | depose   | Oser       | dare        |
| Soutenir   | maintain | Devoir     | be obliged  |
| Nier       | deny     | Pouvoir    | be able     |
| Croire     | believe  | Savoir     | know        |
| Compter    | expect   | Souhaiter  | wish        |
| Esperer    | hope     | Vouloir    | be willing  |
| Desirer    | desire   | Falloir    | must        |
| Ecouter    | } hear   | Insinuer   | insinuate   |
| Entendre   |          | Mener      | carry, lead |
| Ouir       |          | Retourner  | return      |
| Apercevoir |          |            | perceive.   |



The verbs *aimer mieux*, (to have rather)  
and *valoir mieux*, (to be better)

will have no preposition before the infinitive immediately following them; but when a member of comparison is subjoined with the particle comparative *que*, (than) the infinitive of such member has the preposition *de* before it, for this reason, because the particle *que*, in the comparative sense of *than*, never comes before a verb in the infinitive mood without the intervention of the preposition *de*.

A verb coming in French after *trop*, (too or too much) *assez*, (enough) *suffisant*, (sufficient) and *suffire*, (to suffice) always requires the preposition *pour* before it.

---

*Of the Use, SIGNIFICATION, and CONSTRUCTION of the TENSES of VERBS, in the FRENCH LANGUAGE.*

After having seen what case a French verb requires after it, and what preposi-

tion it will have before the infinitive of the next verb in a simple sentence, it is highly important to treat of the use and construction of moods and tenses in a compound sentence, and to explain the nature and signification of them, as well as to observe what mood and tense is to be used in the latter member of a sentence with respect to that of the former; circumstances which have been neglected by all French grammarians, and cause indeed great confusion in the mind of learners.

#### Of the Indicative Mood.

The indicative of a French verb has seven tenses, whose nature and signification are fully and distinctly explained in a methodical order in comparison with the tenses of the English verbs.

#### Of the Present Tense.

We have already observed, that in the conjugation of all verbs, both French  
and

and English, there are properly three tenses only; the one present, the other past, and the third future; that the use of the present tense is so common in both languages, that there is no difference at all between them; and that as for the past time, the difference is so considerable, that the past time is divided in French into five branches, while it is distributed in English into three only; to which we must add, that the three branches of past time are often used in English promiscuously to signify the same idea, without having any regard to the time more or less past; whereas in French we strictly distinguish one past time from another according to the different accidents of verbs, as one may plainly see by the following observations, in which we speak separately of each of the five tenses denoting past time, and properly called thus;

The Preter Imperfect,  
The Perfect Definite,

The

The Perfect Indefinite,  
The First Preterpluperfect, and  
The Second Preterpluperfect.

### Of the Preter Imperfect.

As the preterit of the English verbs answers to the past tenses, called in French preter imperfect and perfect definite, great care must be taken in the application of these two tenses, and in the distinguishing of the cases in which the one is to be preferred to the other, according to the following rules; a particular very necessary to be understood in order to avoid any confusion or mistake.

The preter imperfect of the indicative mood is also called the extended tense, because it extends imperfectly to the present as well as to the past, without giving a complete idea of either, and implies continuous time passing, but not past.

Its most proper and frequent use in French is, to denote that the action, of which we speak, was present in respect  
to



to another action passed in the same time:  
Thus when I say, for instance,

|                       |  |                     |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| J'étois à table quand |  | I was at table when |
| vous arrivates à      |  | you arrived at Lon- |
| Londres               |  | don:                |

my action of being at table was passed, but I express it as present in respect to your arrival, which is also an action past.

The preter imperfect is also used in French when we speak of an action past, repeated several times or continued. Thus if I say,

|                      |  |                    |
|----------------------|--|--------------------|
| Quand j'étois jeune  |  | when I was young I |
| j'allois à la chasse |  | went to hunting;   |

not only my action of going to hunting, though past, is expressed as present in respect to my youth, but also the time of my youth was continued, and the action of hunting was repeated several times.

For when we speak of an action done only once, we must make use of the perfect definite:

|                      |  |                       |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| L'envie fut la cause |  | Envy was the cause of |
| du premier meurtre   |  | the first murder in   |
| dans le monde        |  | the world.            |

The preter imperfect is likewise used in French to denote an action that was done, without any respect to time; therefore it serves also to express in a narration the age, inclinations, or qualifications, of dead persons:

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Quand mon père étoit |  | my father at the age |
| agé de quatre vingts |  | of eighty did not    |
| ans il ne se servoit |  | make use of spec-    |
| pas des lunettes     |  | tacles.              |

But when we speak of people who are living still, we make use of the perfect indefinite; as,

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Ma foeur a été mariée  |  | my sister was married |
| à l'âge de seize ans;  |  | at the age of six-    |
| elle a eu trois maris, |  | teen; she had three   |
| et n'a pas encore      |  | husbands, and has     |
| achevé sa trentième    |  | not yet finished her  |
| année                  |  | thirtieth year.       |

And when we use in such expressions the preter imperfect, we must mention a particular time, whether the person spoken of is dead or alive:

|                         |  |                     |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Cette fille étoit très- |  | this girl was very  |
| belle avant qu'elle     |  | handsome before she |
| eût la petite verole    |  | had the small-pox.  |

## Of the Perfect Definite.

This tense is chiefly used in French to denote an action past, in such a manner that nothing remains of the time in which it was done, and without expressing the addition of another action. Thus when I say, for instance,

|                                   |  |                     |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Je fus malade l'année<br>dernière |  | I was ill last year |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------|

|                                          |  |                                       |
|------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| Je reçus votre lettre le<br>mois dernier |  | I received your letter<br>last month; |
|------------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|

nothing remains of the last year in which I was ill, nor of the last month in which I received your letter.

The perfect definite in French is also called the Historical tense, because it is much used by historians:

|                                                                                                                                                              |  |                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aucun incendie ne fut<br>jamais aussi affreux<br>que celui de l'année<br>1666: il dura plu-<br>sieurs jours et brula<br>beaucoup de mil-<br>liers de maisons |  | no fire was ever so ter-<br>rible as that in the<br>year 1666: it con-<br>tinued several days,<br>and burnt many<br>thousand houses: |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Therefore

Therefore we make use of it when we tell a story, or relate words lately spoken.

But if the time be not perfectly past, then the perfect indefinite is to be used:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Le Roi est allé ce ma- |  | the King is gone this |
| tin à Cheltenham       |  | morning to Chel-      |
|                        |  | tenham.               |

### Of the Perfect Indefinite.

The proper use of this tense, in French, is to denote an action completely finished, but the time in which it was done is either not determined, or else determined by an adverb, in such a manner that something remains of that time. Thus when we say, for instance,

|                         |  |                    |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------|
| Il a perdu mille livres |  | he lost a thousand |
| sterlings au jeu        |  | pounds at gaming,  |

we do not determine positively the time in which it happened; and if we say,

|                        |  |                     |
|------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Il a gagné cette année |  | he won a thousand   |
| mille livres ster-     |  | pounds this year at |
| lings au jeu           |  | gaming,             |

we indeed determine the time of his gain,



gain, which is not perfectly past, because we are still in the same year.

To avoid any mistake in the use of these two different tenses, perfect definite and perfect indefinite, it is to be observed, that the former is used only to denote an action done in a time so perfectly past that nothing remains of it; whereas the latter serves to denote that the action spoken of happened in the day, week, month, year, or age, wherein we live.

#### Of the First Preterpluperfect.

The only use of this tense, in French, is to express an action that was perfectly past, before another which is spoken of was begun, but without determining any action or precise time. Thus when I say,

|                     |                     |                  |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| J'avois été malade, | I had been ill when |                  |
| quand vous m'écri-  |                     | you wrote to me; |
| vites               |                     |                  |

I mean that my illness was past in respect to the time in which you wrote to me,

me, and which is also past at the time wherein I speak.

Of the Second Preterpluperfect.

The proper use of this tense, which is also called perfect anterior, is in French to denote an action perfectly past before another which is spoken of, as the first preterpluperfect, but the time is certain and determined. It is mostly used with these conjunctions;

Quand | lorsque | aussitôt que  
Dès que | après que.

Thus when I say, for instance,  
Quand j'eus reçu l'ar- | when I received the  
gent je m'en allai | money I went away,  
I mean that I went away directly after having received the money.

And here we may take occasion of observing, that these two tenses, first and second preterpluperfect, are used in French with this distinction:

The action expressed by the former follows the chief object of the person who

who speaks; whereas the action expressed by the latter depends upon the action that follows it, to which we chiefly attend.

Thus when we say, as in the two last instances,

J'avois été malade, quand vous m'écrivites,  
Quand j'eus reçu l'argent, je m'en allai;

in the first the chief point of the question is to know in what time you wrote to me; therefore *j'avois été malade* is the chief phrase, and *quand vous m'écrivites* is but an incident.

And in the second instance I mean first, that I went away, and besides, that it happened after having received the money; so that *je m'en allai* is the chief phrase; and the rest *quand j'eus reçu l'argent* is but an incident, because the chief point of the question is to know in what time I went away.

In a word, when we make use of the first preterpluperfect, the action chiefly spoken

spoken of (*j'avois été malade*) goes the first, and the incident (*quand vous m'écrivites*) takes the second place; whereas if the second preterpluperfect be used, the action denoting the chief object of the speaker (*je m'en allai*) goes the second, and the incident (*quand j'eus reçu l'argent*) takes the first place.

#### Of the Future Tense.

The use of the future tense, like that of the present, is so common in both languages, that there is no difference at all between them, and consequently the future tense is used in French, as in English, to denote that a thing shall be, or an action shall or will be done:

|                                                                                                   |                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Les écoliers, qui étudieront attentivement cette methode, apprendront le François en peu de tems. | Scholars, who will study close this method, will learn the French in a short time. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Besides, as there are several conjunctions in French which do not always require



quire the next verb in the conjunctive mood, we must observe here, that we make use of the indicative with the conjunction *que* (that) after all verbs signifying,

| To       | To         | To      | To          |
|----------|------------|---------|-------------|
| Tell     | Say        | See     | Foresee     |
| Foretell | Conjecture | Declare | Certify     |
| Prefage  | Notify     | Signify | Intimate    |
| Suppose  | Set forth  | Presume | Be sensible |
| Perceive | Hear       | Know    | understand  |
| Hope     | Agree      | Own     | Repute      |
| Publish  | Remember   | Forget  | Fancy       |
| Promise  | Imagine    | Judge   | Reckon;     |

and in short after every verb expressive of the faculties of the understanding; and moreover used in such a manner as to imply belief, and certainty of the action spoken of:

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Je dis qu'il est ainsi  | I say that is so      |
| Je crois que c'est vrai | I believe it is true. |

Wherefore, though we shall find that many of the verbs, expressive of some of the above significations, take the conjunctive

junctive mood after them, preceded by the conjunction *que*, when they are used with a negation interrogatively, or so as to imply doubt and ignorance; yet when the negative and interrogation do not appear joined with doubt and uncertainty on the part of the speaker, the indicative may be used. Thus when knowing positively that the peace is made, I wish, merely in asking those about me concerning it, to know whether they are equally well acquainted with it, I would say,

|                   |  |                      |
|-------------------|--|----------------------|
| Savez vous que la |  | Do you know that the |
| paix est faite?   |  | peace is made?       |

In conformity with the rules just laid down, these two impersonal verbs also govern the indicative with the conjunction *que*:

Il semble | it seems || Il paroît | it appears;  
as likewise, all impersonal verbs, denoting a positive certainty; as,

Il est vrai, sur, or certain.

The indicative is also used after the relative pronoun *qui*, placed between two verbs, when it does not denote any wish, want, or necessity:

|                                                   |                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Je plains un homme<br>qui a une mechante<br>femme | I pity the man who<br>has a bad wife: |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

and even after the comparative of adjectives;

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Il est plus favant que<br>je ne croyois | he is more learned<br>than I thought: |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

and after these conjunctions;

|          |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Quand    | Puisque   | Comme     | à ce que  |
| Lorsque  | Parceque  | Comme si  | Ainsi que |
| Tant que | Sitôt que | Après que | Dès que   |

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| De même que | De sorte que  |
| Au lieu que | Pendant que   |
| Depuis que  | Tellement que |
| Selon que   | Suivant que;  |

and others, which do not immediately present themselves, but which may be learnt by the perusal of good authors.

#### Of the Imperative Mood.

There is nothing particular to be observed in this mood, which has only one

tenſe, and without the firſt perſon, as in English, becauſe its uſe is common to both languages, without the leaſt difference, and ſerves only for commanding; begging, or forbidding.

### Of the Conjunctive Mood.

This mood, called alſo ſubjunctive, has in French, like the indicative, ſeven tenſes, whoſe nature and ſignification are here diſtinctly explained, and which are called thus:

The Preſent Tenſe  
The Preter-Imperfect  
The Conditional Tenſe  
The Perfect Definite  
The Firſt Preterpluperfect  
The Second Preterpluperfect, and  
The Second Future.

### Of the Preſent Tenſe.

This tenſe, though called preſent, and therefore ſuppoſing by its denomination that an action is doing, yet, as it belongs to a mood which is not uſed, like the



indicative, for affirming, but only for denoting that something may, might, or should be done, implies a future, and expresses an action as uncertain:

Je ne crois pas qu'elle | I do not believe she  
viennne demain | will come to-morrow.

This sentence requires no comment, as its meaning is evidently future at the first view.

#### Of the Preter Imperfect.

The Imperfect implies likewise a future, and is used to express an action as uncertain, because we cannot say, that what this tense denotes shall be done:

Il ne savoit pas que | he did not know that  
nous revenfions | we should come again.

Where we see that though the verb *revenfions* is past with respect to us, yet, with respect to the verb *savoit*, it implies something future.

When the preter imperfect of the conjunctive mood implies a condition, we make use in its place of the preter imperfect

perfect of the indicative, preceded by the conjunction *si*, as one may see by the remarks made in the next tense.

### Of the Conditional Tense.

The conditional, or uncertain tense, is used in French to express an action, that would, should, could, or might be in an unspecified and indefinite time, as depending upon another uncertain contingency. It consequently denotes time to come, but conditionally:

|                      |  |                           |
|----------------------|--|---------------------------|
| S'il demandoit cette |  | if he asked for that pre- |
| place on la lui don- |  | ferment, they would       |
| neroit               |  | bestow it upon him.       |

The action of giving would take place, if at all, in an uncertain time, because it depends upon his asking, which is also uncertain, being merely a supposition.

The conditional tense is also used in a sense partaking of the present, especially in sentences of wishing:

|                         |  |                       |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Je voudrois qu'il fassé |  | I wish it may be fair |
| beau tems dimanche      |  | weather on Sunday     |
|                         |  | Pourriez              |

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Pourriez vous me prè- | Could or can you lend |
| ter cinquante louis   | me fifty guineas?     |
| d'or?                 |                       |

### Of the Perfect Definite.

The perfect definite expresses an action done in a time which is perfectly past, and always requires the conjunction *que* before it:

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Je ne peux pas dire   | I cannot tell that she |
| qu'elle ait fait cela | did this.              |

### Of the First Preterpluperfect.

This tense implies a wish or condition for a thing which has not been done, but could or might be done, and requires the conditional conjunction *si* immediately before it:

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| S'il avoit épousé cette | if he had married that |
| femme, il auroit été    | woman, he would        |
| plus heureux            | have been happier.     |

### Of the Second Preterpluperfect.

The second preterpluperfect, called also the compound of the conditional, suggests the idea of an action which  
might,

might, could, would, or should have happened in an uncertain time, provided some other contingency had taken place:

|                                                                       |                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Le ministre lui auroit<br>donné cette charge,<br>s'il l'avoit demandé | The minister would<br>have bestowed that<br>preferment on him<br>if he had asked for it. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Of the Second Future.

The use of this tense is to denote an action which is yet to be done with regard to itself, but which will be past with respect to another future action, that is consequently to follow it in point of time:

|                                              |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Quand j'aurai déjeuné<br>j'écrirai la lettre | when I shall have<br>breakfasted I will<br>write the letter. |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|

My breakfasting, which has not yet taken place, but is to be, will be over at the time of my writing the letter, which is as yet only expected, and is to be after my breakfasting.

### Of the Infinitive Mood.

The use of the infinitive, both present  
and



and perfect, is generally the same as that in English, with this distinction however, that it is always preceded in English by the note *to*, unless it be attended by an auxiliary sign in any other mood; as,

I may go | you shall come | we could tell;  
whereas in French it commonly requires one of these prepositions *de*, *à*, *pour*, as we have plainly seen before in speaking about this matter.

In some instances the infinitive mood is used in English when we make use in French of the conjunctive,

Je veux que vous fas- | You must do that.  
siez cela

Besides, we must observe here, that the conjunctive mood, preceded by the conjunction *que*, is used after verbs of wishing, commanding, permitting, prohibiting, and hindering; asking, desiring, beseeching and entreating, fearing, doubting, suspecting, admiring, wondering, being glad and rejoicing, being sorry  
and

and grudging; after all verbs expressive of some intention, desire, affection, passion, sentiment, or motion of the mind; and generally after all verbs used with a negation or interrogation:

|                                             |                                   |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Je souhaite qu'il réussisse                 | I wish he may succeed             |
| Je suis charmé qu'elle soit mariée          | I am glad she is married          |
| Je suis surpris que vous osiez le faire     | I am surprised you dare do that.  |
| Je suis fâché que vous êtes si malheureux   | I am sorry you are so unfortunate |
| Je crains qu'elle ne vienne tout à l'heure  | I fear she will come presently    |
| Voulez vous que j'envoie chercher un fiacre | Shall I send to fetch a coach.    |

But when any of the above verbs are attended by a noun or pronoun, then they require the next verb in the infinitive with *de*:

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Je vous ai ordonné de faire cela   | I ordered you to make that     |
| Je lui demande seulement d'y aller | I only desire him to go there. |

Many

Many of the verbs (particularly those of saying, telling, declaring, and affirming) governing the indicative in general, are sometimes made to govern the conjunctive. When they merely express their natural import, they require to be followed by their proper indicative regimen: but when interrogation, negation, or an implication of doubt or ignorance, is added, it is much better, as being more correct, to use the conjunctive; if, however, the next verb in English be in the present, preterit, future, or their compounds, (for in any other tense it must be left in the indicative)

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Je n'apprends pas      | I do not hear that he |
| qu'il soit guéri       | is cured              |
| Si j'entends dire qu'- | if I hear that she is |
| elle soit arrivée      | arrived;              |

The future English verb, in such cases, must be put in the present of the conjunctive in French.

Many verbs naturally governing the indicative; such as,

Dire

Dire | écrire | pretendre | entendre,  
and perhaps some other verb, whose most  
common signification is that of saying,  
writing, declaring, hearing, are also used  
sometimes with the additional force of  
advising, commanding, willing, intend-  
ing; and then they govern the con-  
junctive:

|                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Dites qu'on vienne de<br>bonne heure  | bid them come early                  |
| J'écris qu'on m'en-<br>voye un lievre | I write to them to<br>send me a hare |
| Je pretends qu'on m'<br>obèisse       | I intend to be obeyed.               |

The conjunctive is likewise used after  
the pronoun relative *qui*, following a su-  
perlative or negative, and generally after  
any case of that relative between two  
verbs, provided some wish, want, desire,  
or necessity, be denoted:

|                                            |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Le meilleur ouvrage<br>qui ait jamais paru | the best work that<br>ever appeared |
| Il n'y a rien dont j'aie<br>plus d'envie   | there is nothing I like<br>better   |

Choisissez



Choisissez une femme | chuse a wife who is  
qui soit prudente | prudent.

The following verbs impersonal govern the conjunctive mood with *que*:

|                    |                      |                 |              |
|--------------------|----------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| Il faut            | it must              | Il importe      | it concerns, |
| Il n'y a pas moyen |                      | there is no way |              |
| Il est à propos    | it is proper, or fit |                 |              |
| Il convient        | it is necessary;     |                 |              |

and when the verb *être* is followed by these adjectives;

|           |             |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Agréable  | agreeable   | Aisé        | easy        |
| Difficile | difficult   | Facheux     | sorrowful   |
| Heureux   | lucky       | Indifferent | indifferent |
| Possible  | possible    | Cruel       | cruel       |
| Juste     | just, right | Villain     | very wrong  |

and with all adjectives expressive of some passion or affection, and desire of the mind, after the manner of the verbs governing the conjunctive.

The following conjunctions require the conjunctive immediately after them:

|             |             |                  |
|-------------|-------------|------------------|
| Quoique     | Pour que    | Encore que       |
| Sans que    | De peur que | Soit que         |
| à moins que | Avant que   | En cas que       |
| à fin que   | Pourvu que  | Jusqu' à ce que. |

Moreover, as the French seldom make use of the same tense as the English in the latter member of a compound sentence, though the former is always common in both languages, the following observations have been thought necessary, in order to distinguish what tense is to be used in the second verb with regard to the first.

When the first tense is in the present or future of the indicative mood, the conjunctive verb must be in the present, if we mean to imply the present or future time, and in its perfect definite if we mean to imply the past:

|                                                                |                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Il faut <i>or</i> il faudra<br>qu'ils soient plus<br>attentifs | They must be more<br>attentive                           |
| Il suffit qu' elle lui ait<br>fait une reponse                 | It is sufficient that she<br>has given him an<br>answer. |

But when a conditional member is subjoined, the time of the conjunctive verb is determined by that of the verb of  
the

the conditional member; with these distinctions:—

*First*; If the indicative verb be present, the conjunctive is present also:

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Je ne doute pas qu'il | I do not doubt but he |
| ne vienne, si on l'en | will come, if they    |
| prie                  | desire him.           |

*2dly*; If the conditional verb be in the preter imperfect, the conjunctive verb is likewise in the imperfect:

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Je ne doutois qu'il ne  | I did not doubt but he |
| vînt, si on l'en prioit | would come, if they    |
|                         | desired him.           |

*3dly*; If the conditional verb be in the first preterpluperfect of the indicative, the conjunctive verb is also in the first preterpluperfect:

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Je doute que j'eusse | I doubt whether I   |
| reussi, si vous ne   | might have succeed- |
| m'aviez secouru      | ed if you had not   |
|                      | assisted me.        |

When the first verb is in the perfect indefinite of the indicative, the second is generally

generally put in the imperfect of the conjunctive (where the conjunctive is proper to be used) when we mean to express the present with respect to the first verb:

|                       |  |                     |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Elle a eu deux maris  |  | She had two hus-    |
| avant qu'elle épousât |  | bands before she    |
| le Prince             |  | married the Prince; |

where we easily see that the action expressed by the verb *épousât* is present with respect to the verb *a eu*.

When we mean to express the past time with respect to the first verb, the conjunctive is in the same tense with the first verb, that is, the compound of the present:

|                        |  |                    |
|------------------------|--|--------------------|
| Il a fallu que le juge |  | The judge ought to |
| se soit informé de     |  | have informed him- |
| plusieurs circum-      |  | self about several |
| stances                |  | circumstances;     |

where *se soit informé* denotes the past with respect to *il a fallu*.

When the second verb expresses an action, which may be done in all times,

D d

it



it may be put in the present of the conjunctive, though the first verb be in the perfect indefinite of the indicative:

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| DIEU nous a donné la  | God gave us reason in |
| raison à fin que nous | order to distinguish  |
| puissions nous dis-   | ourselves from ani-   |
| tinguer des animaux   | mals;                 |

because the possibility of distinguishing ourselves extends there generally to time past, present, and to come, without being specifically confined to either.

When the first verb is in the preter imperfect, or first preterpluperfect, or in either of the conditionals, the conjunctive verb is in the preter imperfect, if we mean to express an action not past:

|                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| Il vaudroit mieux    | It would be better for |
| pour un homme        | a man to lose his      |
| qu'il perdît la vie  | life than to lose his  |
| que de perdre l'hon- | honour.                |
| neur                 |                        |

---

### *Of the GERUND.*

A gerund is a certain inflexion of the verb, expressing its signification or energy

in such a manner as to render it accessorial and subordinate to that of the principal verb of the sentence, and describing some circumstance, manner, or means of the action.

It is generally preceded in French by the preposition *en*, (in) and always ends in *ant*, answers to the participle present ending in *ing* in English, and is indeclinable in both languages.

Gerunds are sometimes called in French participles present, and then always refer to a noun expressed or understood, denoting (like adjectives) quality or attribute of it, and differing however from adjectives in this, that they have the same regimen with their primitive verbs, and in being for the most part indeclinable, except in a few sentences:

|                     |  |                        |
|---------------------|--|------------------------|
| Une étoffe appro-   |  | A stuff near like to   |
| chante du satin     |  | fatin                  |
| Les villages depen- |  | the villages depending |
| dants du comté      |  | upon the county.       |

In order to understand more easily the difference between a gerund, which must always have the preposition *en* before it, and a participle present, which requires no preposition at all, it is proper to use the same verb with and without the preposition *en* by two different sentences.

It is not the same to say in French,  
 Je vous ai vu priant } as { Je vous ai vu en  
 Dieu } priant Dieu.

The first sentence, where *priant* is a participle present, signifies

I have seen you while you were praying to God.

The second, where *priant* is a gerund, means

I have seen you while I was praying to God.

However, we often express in French with the pronoun relative *qui*, and a tense of the indicative mood, what is denoted in English with the participle present, in order to avoid the ambiguity which may arise from the French participle present being

being indeclinable. Thus, instead of saying,

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Je les ai rencontrés |  | I met with them run- |
| courant la poste     |  | ning post,           |

I may likewise say,

Je les ai rencontrés qui couroient la poste;  
because the word *courant*, as a gerund, may refer to the subject *je*, and as a participle present to the object *les*.

And here I cannot omit a particular, very important, and meriting the utmost attention of the learner, concerning the too frequent use of participles present in English, which in many instances are not rendered into French by their correspondent gerunds, instead of which we make use of the infinitive of the verb to which the gerund belongs.

Whenever an English participle present, which ends always in *ing*, such as,

Loving | punishing | receiving | answering,  
has before it any of these prepositions;

D d 3

Of



Of | from | for | in | with | without  
before | after,

the participle present, instead of being translated by its correspondent gerund, as we generally do, must be rendered into French by the infinitive mood of the verb to which the gerund belongs, with these distinctions, however, concerning the prepositions to be prefixed to the infinitive.

*First*; That when the English participle present is used with the prepositions *of*, *from*, or *with*, before it, then these three prepositions are expressed in French by the only preposition *de*, attended by the infinitive:

|                                            |                                               |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| J'ai du moins le plaisir<br>de la voir     | I have at least the<br>pleasure of seeing her |
| Il m'empêche de le<br>faire                | He hinders me from<br>doing it                |
| Je suis heureux d'<br>avoir un seul enfant | I am happy with ha-<br>ving only one child.   |

*2dly*; That the preposition *à* is used in French before the infinitive, when the participle

participle present is preceded in English by the preposition *in*:

Aidez moi à faire cela | assist me in doing that.

3dly; That if the participle present have before it the prepositions *without*, *before*, or *after*, they are literally translated by *sans*, *avant de*, or *après*, and attended in French by an infinitive, and never by a gerund:

|                                                          |  |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Elle boit le thé sans y<br>mettre du sucre               |  | She drinks tea without<br>putting sugar in it       |
| Je vous ferai une vi-<br>site avant d'aller en<br>France |  | I will pay you a<br>visit before going to<br>France |
| Il s'en alla après avoir<br>repondu de la sorte          |  | He went away after ha-<br>ving answered thus.       |

4thly; And that when the participle present is in English preceded by the preposition *for*, the preposition *pour* is always prefixed to the French infinitive, implying particularly the design, end, or reason of doing an action:

|                                                              |  |                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Ils ont été pendus pour<br>avoir volé sur le<br>grand chemin |  | They were hanged for<br>having robbed on<br>the highway. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------|

Wherefore, whenever in English the preposition *to*, coming before an infinitive, can be explained by *for to*, *in order to*, or *with a design to*, with the infinitive, or by *to the end that*, or only *that* with the conjunctive, or by the preposition *for* with the participle present, the preposition *to* must be rendered into French by the preposition *pour*, or sometimes by *à fin de* with the infinitive, or else by *à fin que* with the verb in the conjunctive, when a future design, end, or reason is implied:

|                                                                    |                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Elle parle ainsi pour<br>me faire de la peine                      | She speaks thus to<br>make, <i>or</i> in order to<br>make me uneasy               |
| J'irai le voir demain<br>à fin de le convain-<br>cre de son erreur | I will go and see him<br>to-morrow, in or-<br>der to convince him<br>of his fault |
| Je lui ai envoyé mon<br>carrosse exprès à fin<br>qu'il pût venir   | I sent him my coach<br>on purpose that he<br>might come.                          |

The preposition *by*, (which is strictly expressed by *par* before nouns or pronouns)

nouns) when attended by a participle present, is not comprehended in the aforesaid rule, because it must then be translated by the preposition *en*, and the participle present is rendered into French by a gerund, and never by an infinitive:

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| Les écoliers appren-   | Scholars learn the rules |
| nent les regles d'une  | of a language by         |
| langue en les étudiant | studying them.           |

Nay, participles present in English, when used without any preposition before them, and preceded by either of these verbs,

To avoid | to help | to forbear,  
and similar, are likewise to be expressed in French by the infinitive mood, with the preposition *de* before it, and never by a gerund:

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Il ne put pas s'em- | He could not forbear |
| pecher de rire      | laughing.            |



PARTI-



## PARTICULARS

*With respect to the use of some French Verbs  
as compared with the English.*

In my opinion, there is no language that has so few verbs as the English, for these two evident reasons:

*First*; An English verb, besides its proper and strict signification, such as,

To look | to come | to go | to carry,  
takes another meaning, if it be attended by a preposition, such as

Upon | in | up | down | on | away,  
making then a part of the signification of the verb with which it is joined; and they say,

To look upon | to come in | to come up  
To go down | to go on | to carry away;  
whereas such, and similar expressions, are rendered into French by verbs consisting of only one word thus;

|           |  |           |  |           |
|-----------|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Regarder  |  | entrer    |  | monter    |
| Descendre |  | continuer |  | emporter. |

*2dly*; The

2dly; The verb *to be* is often used in English with an adjective or participle, and then both the verb *to be*, and the adjective, stand in a sentence instead of a verb, and have its meaning; as for instance,

|              |                |                  |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| To be afraid | to be desirous | to be willing    |
| To be fond   | to be ignorant | to be acquainted |
| To be silent | to be worth    | to be born.      |

But such and similar compound verbs are likewise translated in French by verbs having only one word, thus:

|          |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| Craindre | souhaiter | vouloir   |
| Aimer    | ignorer   | connoître |
| Se taire | valoir    | naître.   |

Observe here, that the verb *être* is not of so extensive an use as the correspondent verb *to be*, which, by a peculiar genius, is employed on the following occasions wherein it is not literally translated in French.

*First*; The verb *to be* is sometimes attended by the word *told*, participle of the verb

verb *to tell*, and construed in a neuter voice; as for instance,

I am told | she was told;

while in French such expressions are rendered by the compound tenses of the verb *dire*, impersonally construed, and preceded by a pronoun conjunctive, in the same person as the personal pronoun is in English; and the indeterminate pronominal word *on*, meaning in this sense *one*, is prefixed to the pronoun conjunctive as the subject of the verb; thus,

On m'a dit | on lui avoit dit;

*Literally* | One me has told | one her had told.

2dly; At other times the verb *to be* is attended by the preposition *to* and another verb in the infinitive mood, to express the duty of doing an action; as,

I am to go to Wind- | she was to work for  
for | me;

and then it is to be rendered into French by the verb *devoir*, (to be obliged) through all its tenses:

Je

Je dois aller à Wind- | Elle devoit travailler  
for | pour moi.

3dly; As there are in English two different equivalent ways of conjugating verbs, the one definite, and the other indefinite; the former is made by the assistance of the verb *to be*, attended by a participle present; as,

I am writing | he was sleeping;  
and the latter only by the variation of persons of the verb itself, without any assistance; as,

I write | you read | he slept | she died;  
whereas in French, whether the English verb be conjugated in the former way, or in the latter, we must make use of the verb active or neuter without the help of the verb *être*, or of the gerund, and in such cases we always say,

J'écris | vous lisez | il dormoit | elle mourut,  
and never

Je suis écrivant | il étoit dormant;  
because there is in French only one way  
of



of conjugating verbs, the other being entirely unknown.

Moreover, there are in all languages many verbs which, besides their proper signification, are used in another sense, and with a different meaning.

The verb *venir* (to come) for instance, when attended by the preposition *de*, and another verb in the infinitive mood, is not a verb of motion, but signifies *to have just*, or *to be just*. It is frequently used thus in the present and imperfect tenses of the indicative, but in no other:

|                       |  |                        |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------|
| Je viens de boire     |  | I have drunk just now  |
| Elle venoit de sortir |  | she was just gone out. |

The verb *aller*, (to go) is sometimes used in French with two pronouns, and the particle *en* before it, meaning *to go away*, and construed thus; the pronoun personal takes the first place, as usual, then comes the pronoun conjunctive corresponding to the personal, and then the particle

particle *en* immediately followed by a person of the verb *aller* :

|                   |  |                   |
|-------------------|--|-------------------|
| Il s'en va        |  | he goes away      |
| Ils s'en allerent |  | they went away    |
| Je m'en allois    |  | I was going away. |

The conjunction *and* is sometimes used in English between a verb expressive of motion, and another verb which is put in the same tense, person, and number with the former; as,

I will come and dine with you.

But in such a case not only we omit in French the preposition *et*, but also we always put the second verb in the infinitive mood, without any preposition; thus

Je viendrai diner avec vous.

If before some active verbs, used in a neuter voice; such as,

Faire | to make || Vendre | to sell,  
we make use in French of the pronoun *se*; as for instance,

Cette étoffe se fait en Italie, et se vend  
en Angleterre.

Such

Such a construction, which is indeed frequently used, is equivalent to, and even more elegant than this grammatical expression;

*Cette étoffe est faite en Italie, et est vendue  
en Angleterre,*

and is rendered into English thus,  
This stuff is made in Italy, and sold in England.

Besides, there are in both languages many verbs which have several meanings, and are then expressed in either language by two verbs having different significations, as one may see by the following observations:

The verb *to marry*, in English, is rendered into French by the verb *marier* when a man gives his daughter in marriage, and by *épouser* when a man takes a wife, or a woman takes a husband.

The verb *to know*, in English, is translated in French by the verbs *savoir* and *connoître*, with this difference, that *savoir* is said of an intellectual knowledge, and  
*connoître*

*connoître* of a personal knowledge, coming from the evidence of our sense.

The verb *to think*, used in English in the sense of *to believe*, or *to suppose*, is translated in French by the verb *croire*, and if in the sense of *to reflect* or *to meditate*, by the verbs *penser* or *songer*.

On the contrary, the verb *defendre*, in French, is expressed in English by the verb *to defend* when it means *to assist*, and by the verb *to forbid* when it signifies a prohibition.

The verb *aimer* answers to the verb *to love* when it implies an affection for persons, and to the verb *to like* if it be used to express our inclination to some inanimate thing.

And the verb *arriver* is said in English *to arrive* if it be used as a verb expressive of motion, and *to happen* when it implies some accident or chance.

Finally, it is not with the French verbs as with the English, whose moods

E e

and



and tenses are distinguished by these helping defective verbs, called otherwise signs:

|     |  |       |  |       |  |        |  |       |  |     |
|-----|--|-------|--|-------|--|--------|--|-------|--|-----|
| Do  |  | may   |  | can   |  | shall  |  | will  |  | let |
| Did |  | might |  | could |  | should |  | would |  | to, |

and prefixed to the word of the verb, which has no diversity of persons to express the different manners of it; whereas the French verbs change their inflexions or terminations not only in every mood and tense, but even in every person. Therefore, by the above signs, which cannot be translated in French, the learner must know only whether the verb is in the present, past, or future tense, and whether it implies certainty or uncertainty, and affirmation or negation.

---

*Of the IMPERSONAL VERBS.*

The pronoun demonstrative *ce*, and the personal *il*, joined with the verb *être*, thus;

|        |   |       |  |          |   |         |
|--------|---|-------|--|----------|---|---------|
| C'est  | } | it is |  | C'ètoit  | } | it was, |
| Il est |   |       |  | Il ètoit |   |         |

cannot

cannot be used indiscriminately the one for the other. The following rules will lead to an explanation of their proper force and use:

The impersonal verb *c'est* is always used when the question concerning the hour is of such a nature as to be followed by a relative member:

|                     |  |                   |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|
| Quelle heure est ce |  | What is the clock |
| qui sonne?          |  | striking now?     |

and whenever the question is asked with *c'est* it must also be answered with it, because the same relative member is understood after it, as is expressed in the question:

|            |  |                       |
|------------|--|-----------------------|
| C'est midi |  | it is twelve o'clock; |
|------------|--|-----------------------|

We also say,

|                   |  |                     |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|
| C'est demain fête |  | To-morrow is a holy |
|                   |  | day                 |

|                   |  |                    |
|-------------------|--|--------------------|
| C'est aujourd'hui |  | To-day is Tuesday. |
| mardi             |  |                    |

*Ce* is likewise proper in impersonal methods of speaking, with *est* before nouns and pronouns:

E e 2

C'est

|                        |  |                         |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| C'est la loi qui l'or- |  | It is the law which or- |
| donne                  |  | ders that               |
| C'est lui qui le fait  |  | It is he who does this. |

The pronoun *ce*, used impersonally with the verb *être*, is not only construed with the pronoun personal of the singular number, followed by a relative and a verb, which agrees with the pronoun personal, as we have seen just now, but also with the pronouns personal of the plural, followed by a verb, after the same manner:

|                       |  |                        |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------|
| C'est nous qui payons |  | It is we who pay the   |
| l'argent              |  | money                  |
| C'est eux qui le re-  |  | It is they who receive |
| çoivent               |  | it.                    |

The Impersonal *il est* is used when the verb is followed by an adjective without a noun substantive, and with a sentence, which is necessary in order to complete the sense of the adjective and the impersonal:

|                     |  |                         |
|---------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Il est dangereux de |  | It is dangerous to tra- |
| voyager par mer     |  | vel by sea.             |

It

It is also used before nouns denoting time, or a part of time, when no relative member follows it, either expressed or understood:

|                      |  |                      |
|----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Quelle heure est il? |  | What is it o'clock?  |
| Il est trois heures  |  | It is three o'clock. |

Moreover, *c'est* is used in French with reference to persons as well as to things, and consequently stands in a sentence instead of

He is | she is | it is.

The only difference between *ce* and *il*, or *elle*, applied to persons, seems to be that *ce* is something less definitive than the regular pronouns personal, and that in general the noun following *il est*, or *elle est*, except under particular circumstances, takes no article; whereas with *c'est* it would have the numeral noun *un* or *une*:

|                 |   |  |                 |
|-----------------|---|--|-----------------|
| C'est un Eveque | } |  | He is a Bishop  |
| Il est Eveque   |   |  |                 |
| C'est une veuve | } |  | She is a widow, |
| Elle est veuve  |   |  |                 |



The impersonal *c'est*, used in French in the sense of *to be one's turn, business, or duty*, is always followed by a noun or pronoun personal, in the dative case, and requires the preposition *à* before the next infinitive:

|                                 |  |                                           |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|
| C'est à vous à lui en<br>parler |  | It is your duty to speak<br>of it to him. |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------|

The verb *être*, following the pronoun *ce*, is sometimes used in the plural number:

|                                                                                  |  |                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Je lis souvent Homere<br>et Virgile, parceque<br>ce sont les meilleurs<br>Poëtes |  | I often read Homer<br>and Virgil, because<br>they are the best<br>poets. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|

The impersonal or defective verbs *must* and *should*, signifying duty or necessity of doing an action, and preceded by a pronoun personal, or any other nominative, are rendered into French by the impersonal verb *falloir*, which is varied thus;

|                   |            |                    |                |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>Present</i>    | Il faut    | <i>Pluperfect</i>  | Il avoit fallu |
| <i>Imperfect</i>  | Il falloir | <i>Future</i>      | Il faudra      |
| <i>Definite</i>   | Il fallut  | <i>Imperfect</i>   | Qu'il fallût   |
| <i>Indefinite</i> | Il a fallu | <i>Conditional</i> | Il faudroit.   |

But the verb *falloir* is not construed in French in the same manner as the verbs *must* and *should* are in English: here is the difference;

The verbs *must* and *should* come always between a noun or pronoun in the nominative case, and a verb in the infinitive mood, attended by another noun in the accusative; and they say,

I must study my lesson;  
Scholars should learn every day something  
by heart;

and the verb *falloir*, in French, having always the pronoun personal *il* before it, is followed by the conjunction *que*; then comes the noun or pronoun as the subject of the verb, and the verb following both is to be put in the conjunctive mood, and attended by another noun; and we say,

Il faut que j'étudie ma leçon;  
Il faudroit que les écoliers apprissent tous les  
jours quelque chose par coeur.

*Literally* { It must that I should study my lesson  
{ It should that scholars would learn &c.  
However,

However, we sometimes make use of the verb *devoir* instead of *falloir*, and then the construction in French is the same with that of the verb *must*:

Il doit revenir ce soir | he must return to night.

The verb *falloir* is sometimes followed by an infinitive, and denotes the necessity of doing something in general, without specifying what is bound by it, and then the subject of the verb *must* may be *I* or *we*, *he*, *she*, or *they*, as the speaker may mean:

Il faut être sobre | We must be sober.

The necessity of having something is also denoted by the verb *falloir*; as,

|                         |  |                     |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Il faut avoir de la pa- |  | He must have pati-  |
| tience avec les éco-    |  | ence with his scho- |
| liers                   |  | lars.               |

A pronoun conjunctive, in the dative case, coming between the personal pronoun *il* and a tense of the verb *falloir*, appropriates the necessity or want to the persons represented by the pronoun, which

which is made the subject of *must* in English:

Il lui faut un chapeau | He must have a hat.

The impersonal *falloir* is used likewise absolutely at the end of a sentence, with the conjunction *comme* before it, in which case it implies duty and decency, and it is rendered by *should*:

Elle ne se conduit pas | She does not behave  
comme il faut | as she should.

We have already seen in the first part, that whenever a tense of the verb *to be* is immediately preceded by the adverb *there*, it is to be rendered into French by the verb *avoir*, which is always used in the third person singular, and in no other, (though a plural noun follow it) and the particle relative *y* is prefixed to the verb. To understand this rule more clearly, we may here observe, that though in such a case the verb *to be* is used without any pronoun personal; as for instance,

S. There



|                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| S. There is a man    | S. There was a woman     |
| P. There are two men | P. There were two women; |

the personal pronoun *il* takes the first place in the French sentence, is followed by the particle relative *y*, and then comes the verb *avoir*, impersonally used, and attended by a noun; thus,

|                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| S. Il y a un homme    | S. Il y avoit une femme    |
| P. Il y a deux hommes | P. Il y avoit deux femmes; |

*Literally* { It there has a man or two men  
 { It there had a woman or two women.

Most phrases beginning in English with the pronoun *some* and the verb *to be*, are expressed in French by the impersonal verb *il y a* and the partitive article *des*:  
 Il y a des faux amis | some friends are false.

The impersonal verb *il y a* is besides applied with propriety in sentences expressive of quantity of time past since an event; in this case the French begin with *il y a*, attended by the noun of time, and its numeral prefixed, and followed by

*que*; next comes a noun or pronoun, standing as the subject of the verb, which comes after it, and is in the present tense or compound present, as the sense of the sentence may require; as,

Il y a vingt ans qu'elle est morte.

This phrase may be transposed thus, with the omission of the particle *que*,

Elle est morte, il y a vingt ans;  
and is rendered into English thus,

She has been dead these twenty years;  
which is equivalent to the literal meaning

It is twenty years that she is dead.

The impersonal *il y a* is used likewise with propriety before words denoting the space of place:

|                       |  |                      |
|-----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Il y a cent lieues de |  | Paris is one hundred |
| Londres à Paris       |  | leagues distant from |
|                       |  | London.              |

This impersonal verb requires the preposition *à* before the next infinitive:

|                          |  |                         |
|--------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Il y a du plaisir à voir |  | It is a pleasure to see |
| ses amis                 |  | one's friends.          |

When

When we speak of something present, as if pointed out with the finger, the English expressions,

There is, and there are, used in the sense of

Here is, here are, or behold, are translated by *voici* or *voila*, and not by *il y a*.

The impersonal *il fait* is used with adjectives, and sometimes with nouns, denoting the state of the weather and air, and certain accidents of seasons, and is translated in English, in such instances, by *it is*:

|                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Il fait beau tems     | it is fair weather |
| Il fait du vent       | it is windy        |
| Il fait du brouillard | it is foggy.       |

The impersonal verb *to happen* is strictly expressed in French by the impersonal *arriver*; but it is sometimes used in English, like the defective verb *must*, between the noun or pronoun in the nominative case, and a verb in the infinitive mood, and they say, for instance,

I hap-

I happened to meet with her;  
 whereas in French the verb *arriver* is not  
 expressed in such a case, but the next  
 verb is to be put in the same tense as the  
 verb *to happen* is in English, and followed  
 by the adverb *par hazard*, (by chance)  
 which implies the accident denoted by  
 the verb *to happen*, and we properly say,

Je la rencontrai par hazard;

*Literally* | I met her by chance.







## CHAP. V.

### *Of the PARTICIPLE.*

**T**HAT which merits the attention of the learner concerning this subject, is to recollect, that though participles active in French are commonly indeclinable, yet when an active verb is preceded, in its compound tenses, by any of the relative pronouns,

Le | la | les | que,

or by any of these pronouns conjunctive,

Me | te | nous | vous,

in the accusative case, governed as an object of the verb, the participle active in these two cases must agree in gender and number with the noun substantive to which the pronoun relative refers, and which the conjunctive represents, as we have observed in the first part.

To which particular we may add, that it is the same with the pronouns interrogative,

rogative, both adjective and substantive; and consequently if a compound tense of active verbs be preceded by any of these interrogative pronouns,

*Masculine.*

S. Quel or le quel

P. Quels or les quels

*Feminine.*

Quelle or la quelle

Quelles or les quelles;

the participle active in this case also must agree in gender and number with the noun substantive to which the interrogative pronoun is joined or relates:

Quelles nouvelles avez vous reçues de sa nièce?

La quelle avoit il perdue?

What news have you received from her neice?

Which had he lost?

However, active participles, though construed in the compound tenses with any pronoun relative, conjunctive, or interrogative, are indeclinable in the following occasions:

*First*; When the sense of the sentence is not complete by the active verb, of which the participle makes a part, but  
some

some other word or words must be added to complete it:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il a acheté deux mon- |  | He bought two watch-  |
| tres, mais il ne les  |  | es, but would not pay |
| a voulu payer         |  | for them.             |

2dly; When the subject of the verb comes after it;

|                     |  |                      |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|
| Les politesses, que |  | The civilities which |
| nous ont fait nos   |  | our friends did us   |
| amis, font surpre-  |  | are surprising.      |
| nantes              |  |                      |

3dly; When any of the above pronouns is governed in the dative case, expressive of the end of the verb, or otherwise of the person to whom the action is addressed, and not in the accusative, expressing its object:

|                    |  |                       |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Elle vous a envoyé |  | She sent you a pretty |
| un joli present    |  | present:              |

where the pronoun *vous* is not in the accusative case, but in the dative, because we do not mean that you have been sent, but only that a present has been sent to you.

Participles

Participles are sometimes used in French in short incidental absolute sentences, like the Latin absolute case:

|                                              |                                           |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Cela dit, il s'en alla                       | Having said this, he<br>went away         |
| Cela fait, elle s'en re-<br>tourna chez elle | Having made that,<br>she went home again. |

Besides, as there are in English a great many words ending in *ed*; such as,

Loved | punished | received | answered;  
which are sometimes participles, and at other times preterits, or past times, great care must be taken by learners, especially those who are unacquainted with the Latin, in the distinguishing their nature and character, such words being rendered into French by two different ways, according to their different signification.

They are participles, if they have before them any tense of one of the auxiliary verbs *to have* or *to be*, preceded by a noun or pronoun in the nominative case; as,

F f

Peter



Peter has answered thus | She is punished;  
and they are preterits, or past times,  
when they are immediately preceded by  
a noun or pronoun in the nominative  
case, as the subject of the verb, with-  
out any assistance of one of the auxilia-  
ries; as,

Peter received her | She loved him:

Therefore the two former instances, in  
which the words ending in *ed* are partici-  
ples, must be rendered into French thus:

Pierre a repondu ainsi | Elle est punie;

and the two latter, wherein they are  
preterits, must be translated in this  
manner:

Pierre la reçut | Elle l'aimoit.





## CHAP. VI.

### *Of the ADVERB.*

**C**ERTAIN adverbs, through the licence of custom, have usurped the place of substantives, being to all intents and purposes governed and governing after the manner of nouns.

A simple detail of examples, without any farther observation, will be sufficient here.

The following adverbs,

Dehors | dedans | dessus | dessous

Devant | derrière | environ,

become true nouns substantive in the most extensive sense of the word, taking the article definite *le* before them, being regularly declined, and admitting some of them of the plural termination:

|                          |  |                          |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Le dessus d'une table    |  | The top of a table       |
| Le derrière de la maison |  | The hind part of a house |

Les environs du pays | The environs of a  
country.

Observe here, with respect to the regimen of adverbs, that those of them which are derived from verbs or adjectives govern nouns in the same cases with their primitives; therefore, for instance, as the French adjectives,

Different | Independent,  
govern the genitive case, and

Relative | Preferable,  
the dative, we must say,

Differemment de ce que je vous fais voir  
Independemment des loix de la Cité  
Relativement à l'acte du Parlement  
Preferablement à toute autre chose.

Adverbs denoting quantity; such as,

Beaucoup | peu | trop | assez | tant,  
and the like, being followed by a noun substantive, require the indefinite article *de* between them and the next noun, though they are used in English without any preposition:

Beaucoup

|                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| Beaucoup de fautes   | many faults      |
| Beaucoup de jugement | much judgment    |
| Peu de sagesse       | little wisdom    |
| Trop de vanité       | too much vanity. |

The adverb of quantity, *enough*, in English, is always used after nouns, and they say,

He is skilful and industrious enough

She has wit and beauty enough;

but in French the correspondent adverb *assez* is put, as any other adverb of quantity, before nouns both substantive and adjective, and we translate the two above instances thus:

Il est assez adroit et industrieux

Elle a assez d'esprit et de beauté.

The adverbs or terms of comparison,

Plus | moins | mieux | plutôt | tant,

and the like, require the preposition *de*, preceded by the particle *que*, between them and the next infinitive:

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Etudiez, mes enfans, | Study, my children, |
| plutôt que de per-   | rather than to lose |
| dre le tems          | time.               |



The adverb *bien*, taken for *beaucoup*, (much or many) and not for *well* or for *very*, requires after it the definite article in the genitive case:

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Il a bien de la peine              | He has a great deal of trouble |
| Elle avoit bien du genie           | She had much genius            |
| Ils lui envoyèrent bien des choses | They sent her many things.     |

The French word *où*, with an accent over the *ù*, is an adverb of place, meaning *where*; and when it has no accent, it answers to the English conjunction *or*.

When the word *même* is neither an adjective nor a pronoun, it is an adverb, signifying in English *even*, *also*, or *nay*; and the adverb *de même* is rendered into English by *in the same manner*.

The adverb *then* is not always translated in French by the same word, because it has three significations. It is rendered by *alors*, when used in the sense of *in that time*:

Elle

Elle étoit alors jeune | She then was young;  
by *ensuite*, when it denotes an action done  
after another,

Je soupai et ensuite | I supped, and then I  
j'allai coucher | went to bed;  
and by *donc* in sentences expressive of  
conclusion:

Je ne vous verrai donc | Then I shall not see  
avant vôtre départ | you before your de-  
parture.





## CHAP. VII.

### *Of the* PREPOSITION.

**A**S many prepositions are idiomatically used in French with a construction and signification different from the English prepositions, naturally corresponding to them, it is proper here to consider their force and nature, as well as to explain methodically their meaning by alphabetical order, for more facility in referring to them:

The preposition *A* not only signifies *to*, when it denotes the end of the action of the verb, or otherwise the persons or things to which it tends; as,

|                    |  |                       |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Donner une pomme à |  | To give an apple to a |
| un enfant          |  | child;                |

but also answers to the preposition *at*, followed by a noun denoting place, time, and games:

|                                                                                  |                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Il arriva à Bath à six<br>heures du soir, et joua<br>aux cartes toute la<br>nuit | He arrived at Bath at<br>six o'clock in the<br>evening, and played<br>at cards all the night. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

AVANT denotes priority of time, as also of order or rank, and signifies in English *before*:

J'ai vu cela avant vous | I saw that before you.

APRÈS means *after*, denotes posterity both of time, place, and order, and is used in opposition to *avant* with respect to time, and to *devant* with respect to place and order:

|                                                                               |                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Après ce mois ci<br>Son jardin est après le<br>mien<br>Il marchoit après nous | After this month<br>His garden is after or<br>next to mine<br>He walked after us. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

It is used likewise as an adverb of time, or rather as a preposition, whose regimen is understood;

|                                                           |                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Commencez par dè-<br>jeuner, et vous étu-<br>dierez après | Begin by breakfasting,<br>and after you shall<br>study. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|

D'APRÈS



D'APRÈS is a compound preposition, signifying *from, by, after, or according to*:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il a été élevé d'après |  | He was educated after |
| la façon Française     |  | the French manner.    |

CHEZ, followed by a pronoun personal, or a proper name of a person, signifies some body's house:

|                          |  |                       |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il vous attend chez      |  | He is waiting for you |
| moi                      |  | at my house           |
| Il faut que j'aille chez |  | I must go to Mr.      |
| Monsieur le Major        |  | Mayor.                |

It is always preceded by the indefinite article *de*, when the verb going before is expressive of coming or returning from a house:

|                      |  |                        |
|----------------------|--|------------------------|
| Je venois de chez le |  | I came from the King's |
| Roi                  |  | palace.                |

It is also used in the sense of *among, or with*, followed by a national noun:

|                        |  |                         |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| C'est l'usage chez les |  | It is a custom with the |
| François de boire      |  | French people to        |
| du café tout de suite  |  | drink coffee direct-    |
| après diner            |  | ly after diner.         |

CONTRE

CONTRE denotes opposition or displeasure:

|                           |  |                       |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il se facha contre elle   |  | He was angry with her |
| Vous parlates contre nous |  | You spoke against us. |

It signifies also proximity of situation:

Il étoit assis contre moi | He sat down by me.

A COTÈ DE is a compound preposition, and implies also proximity of place:

Il passa à cotè d'elle | He passed by her.

DANS and EN both signify in English *in*, but they are not used in French indiscriminately the one for the other. Here is the difference between them; *dans* denotes a relation of time and place, and then answers to the prepositions *in* or *within*:

|                                |  |                              |
|--------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Cela arriva dans la même année |  | It happened in the same year |
| Dans un mois et demi           |  | Within a month and a half.   |

With verbs of motion it signifies *into*:

|                              |  |                               |
|------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Quand il entra dans l'église |  | When he went into the Church. |
|------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|

It denotes likewise the motive or view of one's actions:

|                                  |  |                                             |
|----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|
| Dans le dessein de s'y<br>amuser |  | With the design of<br>amusing himself there |
|----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|

EN (which is also a particle relative) denotes place and things, considered as relating to place, and never admits of the article before its regimen, except when it suffers an elision:

|                       |  |                     |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Il est en Angleterre  |  | He is in England    |
| Des châteaux en l'air |  | Castles in the air; |

whereas *dans* is always followed by an article definite, except before pronouns possessive copulative, pronouns demonstrative and improper, proper names of authors quoted, and of towns, before which *en* is never used.

EN denotes likewise time and things, considered as relating to time:

En hiver | in winter || En été | in summer.

Before a noun of time it denotes the space of time which slides away in doing any thing, while *dans* denotes the space

of time after which something is to be done; as for instance,

|                          |  |                        |
|--------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Je vais à Paris en trois |  | I go to Paris in three |
| jours                    |  | days;                  |

that is, I am not longer in my way than three days in going:

|                      |  |                     |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Je vais à Paris dans |  | I go to Paris three |
| trois jours          |  | days hence;         |

that is, after three days are gone I will set out.

EN denotes likewise the state and disposition of persons or things, and marks the country whither one is going:

|                     |  |                      |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|
| Etre en bonne santé |  | To be in good health |
| Aller en Allemagne  |  | To go to Germany.    |

It serves also to denote the manner of being or acting, and the dress one is in:

|                            |  |                             |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Etre en robe de chambre    |  | To be in one's night-gown   |
| Parler en honnête homme    |  | To speak like an honest man |
| Elle est habillée en homme |  | She is dressed like a man.  |

DANS has in French a very peculiar use in some sentences:

I drink



|                              |  |                                 |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| I drink it out of the<br>cup |  | He took it out of an<br>author; |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|

where *out of* must be rendered by *dans*;

|                          |  |                                |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| Je le bois dans la tasse |  | Il l'épuisa dans un<br>auteur. |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------------|

DE or DES, an inseparable preposition, gives the words composed of it a contrary signification to that which they have when simple:

|          |           |             |              |
|----------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| Faire    | to do     | Defaire     | to undo      |
| Mentir   | to lie    | Dementir    | to belie     |
| Avantage | advantage | Defavantage | disadvantage |
| Honneur  | honour    | Deshonneur  | dishonour.   |

DEPUIS denotes time and place, as also order or enumeration of things, signifies *from* or *since*, and is commonly followed in the sentence by *jusqu'à*, (till or to). In such case *depuis* marks the term from which, and *jusqu'à* to which:

|                       |  |                     |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Depuis deux heures    |  | From two o'clock to |
| jusqu'à trois         |  | three               |
| Je ne l'ai pas vu de- |  | I have not seen him |
| puis son retour       |  | since his return.   |

DERRIERE

**DERRIERE** signifies *behind*, and denotes place:

Il est derriere vous | He is behind you.

It is also used adverbially, and frequently construed with *de* or *par*.

**AU DESSUS** and **AU DESSOUS**, which require *de* before their regimen, are two compound prepositions denoting the former superiority and the latter inferiority of age; place, rank, and other physical and moral circumstances:

Il loge au dessus de moi | He lodges above me

Je loge au dessous d'elle | I lodge below her.

They are supposed to become adverbs; but perhaps the truth is, that their regimen is understood:

Elle occupe le premier étage, et je loge au dessus | She lives in the first floor, and I lodge above.

**PAR DESSUS** and **PAR DESSOUS** are also prepositions, without requiring *de* before their regimen.

They

They are likewise supposed to be used sometimes adverbially, but with as little reason as *au dessus* and *au dessous*, since they have the same meaning with them.

DEVANT answers to *before*, and is often construed with *de au* and *par*.

It is also used adverbially in some phrases:

|                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| Passer devant    | To go before                     |
| Courir au devant | To run before <i>or</i> forward. |

A L'EGARD, *or* QUANT A, answer to several English expressions;

as to | with respect to | in comparison of | as for,

|                                                         |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| A l'égard or quant au<br>prix nous en con-<br>viendrons | With respect to the<br>price we will agree |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| A mon égard | For my sake. |
|-------------|--------------|

HORS denotes exclusion or exception, answers to the English prepositions *out* or *except*, and requires the article definite of the genitive when it comes before a noun of place:

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| Hors du royaume  | Out of the kingdom |
| Hors le dimanche | Except on Sunday.  |

**HORMIS, EXCEPTÉ, and A LA RESERVE,** denote also exclusion and exception. The two former govern the noun immediately without *de*, although they require it before the infinitive, and govern the indicative with *que*; and the latter is used with *de* before the next noun, as well as the infinitive:

|                                                              |                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Ils sortirent tous excepté, <i>or</i> hormis les domestiques | They all went out but, <i>or</i> except, the servants |
| Il lui a donné tout à la réserve de sa rente viagère         | He gave him all except his annuity.                   |

**JUSQUE** denotes place and time, to a degree which cannot be exceeded, or which, in the mind of the speaker, is very great, and requires after it the preposition *à*, if no other preposition intervene, before a noun or verb.

It is indifferent to spell *jusque* with or without an *s* at the end; but when a vowel follows, it loses the final *s*, and the vowel *e* is cut off:

G g

Depuis



Depuis Bristol jusqu'à | From Bristol to Bath.  
Bath

This preposition, attended by an article in the dative case, (*à, au, à la, aux*) occurs only in certain elliptical sentences, expressive of extremes and excess; and then signifies *even*:

Il aime jusqu'à ses en- | He loves even his  
nemis | enemies.

AU LIEU means *instead*, requires *de* before the next noun or infinitive, and implies substitution:

Au lieu d'une reponse | Instead of an answer  
Au lieu d'aller à l'école | Instead of going to  
school.

LOIN, answering to *far*, implies distance, and requires *de* before the next noun or infinitive:

Loin de chez moi | Far from my house  
Loin de secourir les | Far from assisting the  
pauvres | poor.

MALGRÉ and EN DEPIT imply resistance and opposition, and govern *malgré*, the noun, without *de*, and *en depit* with it:

|                         |  |                           |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Il l'a fait malgré moi. |  | He did it in spite of me. |
| En dépit de son grand   |  | In spite of his grand-    |
| père                    |  | father.                   |

PAR is a preposition frequently used, and denotes,

*First*, The cause, motive, reason, instrument, and manner of being or doing a thing:

|                          |  |                      |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Vous n'en parlez que     |  | You speak of it only |
| par envie                |  | out of envy          |
| Il sortit par la fenêtre |  | He went out of the   |
|                          |  | window.              |

*2dly*; Place, and is sometimes construed with several prepositions and adverbs of place:

|                     |  |                      |
|---------------------|--|----------------------|
| Par tout le Royaume |  | All over the kingdom |
| Par ici             |  | this way             |
| Par où              |  | which way            |
|                     |  | Par là               |
|                     |  | that way             |
|                     |  | Par tout             |
|                     |  | every where.         |

*3dly*; Motion and passage through:

|                       |  |                     |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Il passa par la place |  | He went through the |
|                       |  | square.             |

*4thly*; It is also construed with the infinitive after verbs signifying beginning and ending:

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| Il commença par se     | He began with com-     |
| plaindre, et finit par | plaining, and finished |
| demander de l'argent   | with asking money.     |

*5thly*; At other times it is construed with nouns, without the article, and then denotes distribution and division:

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Donner tant par tête | To give so much for |
|                      | each.               |

POUR denotes the end or final cause, motive and reason of doing any thing, and the use for which a thing is designed:

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Celui-ci est pour moi, | This is for me, and |
| et celui-là est pour   | that is for you.    |
| vous                   |                     |

It is sometimes construed with the infinitive (and not *de* or *à*) after the adverbs of quantity *trop* and *assez*, the adjective *suffisant*, and the verb *suffire*, as we have seen before.

PRÉS and AUPRÉS denote proximity of place, are always attended by *de*, except in some few cases of common discourse, and signify *near* or *by*:

Asseyez

|                             |  |                                 |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| Afféyez-vous près du<br>feu |  | Sit down near or by<br>the fire |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|

|                       |  |                  |
|-----------------------|--|------------------|
| Elle demeure ici près |  | She lives hereby |
|-----------------------|--|------------------|

|                                      |  |                               |
|--------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Sa maison est auprès<br>de la mienne |  | His house is next to<br>mine. |
|--------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|

The former denotes also proximity of time:

|                          |  |                       |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il est bien près de midi |  | It is very near noon, |
|--------------------------|--|-----------------------|

and the latter denotes likewise a relation of domestic, servile, or at least dependent attachment:

|                                |  |                     |
|--------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Etre auprès d'un Sei-<br>gneur |  | To be about a Lord; |
|--------------------------------|--|---------------------|

as also a relation of comparifon:

|                                                          |  |                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Un royaume n'est rien<br>auprès du refte de<br>l'univers |  | A kingdom is nothing<br>in comparifon of the<br>refte of the univerfe. |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------|

PROCHE denotes likewise proximity of place, and is generally accompanied by *de*:

|                                   |  |                      |
|-----------------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Sa boutique est pro-<br>che d'ici |  | His fhop is hard by. |
|-----------------------------------|--|----------------------|

SANS, anfwering to *without*, denotes ex-  
clufion and privation, and confequently



has a negative meaning implied in its signification, and is sometimes construed with the infinitive:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Il est à présent sans |  | He is now without em- |
| emploi et sans amis   |  | ployment and friend-  |
|                       |  | less.                 |

SELON *and* SUIVANT answer to the prepositions

According to | agreeably to | conformably to,  
and govern the noun with an article definite in the accusative case before them:

|                 |  |                         |
|-----------------|--|-------------------------|
| Selon le mérite |  | According to the merit  |
| Suivant l'ordre |  | Agreeably to the order. |

SUR answers to the prepositions,

On | upon | over,

both in the proper and figurative sense;

|                |  |                              |
|----------------|--|------------------------------|
| Sur la commode |  | Upon the chest of<br>drawers |
| Sur le cabaret |  | On the tea-board;            |

and frequently denotes a particular time to which we approach, either expressed or understood:

|                          |  |                     |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Il partit sur les quatre |  | He set out at about |
| heures                   |  | four o'clock;       |

as likewise superiority of power:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Un Prince qui regne   |  | A Prince who reigns   |
| sur plusieurs nations |  | over several nations. |

A TRAVERS *and* AU TRAVERS, signifying *through* or *across*, are two compound prepositions, the first of which comes immediately before its regimen, and the latter takes *de* between it and its regimen:

|                     |   |                   |
|---------------------|---|-------------------|
| A travers le corps  | } | Through the body. |
| Au travers du corps |   |                   |

VERS *and* ENVERS are two prepositions, the first of which denotes a tendency towards a certain state or situation, and also time as approaching to a certain portion of it, and the latter implies likewise a situation, but is used only in reference to persons:

|                                      |  |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Vers l'orient                        |  | Towards the east                    |
| Vers les cinq heures                 |  | About five o'clock                  |
| Il est ingrat envers son bienfaiteur |  | He is ungrateful to his benefactor. |

VIS-A-VIS is always attended by *de*, and signifies *over-against* or *opposite*:

Je

Je me plaçai vis-a-vis | I placed myself op-  
de lui | posite him.

### The English prepositions,

Again | back | away | down | forth  
In | on | up | out | off,

often make part of the signification of some English verbs which they attend, and are not particularly expressed in French but by the comprehensive force of the verb,

To take up | ramasser || To pull off | arracher  
To walk in | entrer || To set out | partir.

The following French prepositions govern, beside nouns, the verb in the infinitive mood;

|            |             |               |               |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| A }        | to          | De peur de    | } for fear of |
| De }       |             | De crainte de |               |
| Pour       | for or to   | Faute de      | for want of   |
| Après      | after       | A fin de      | in order to   |
| Sans       | without     | Jusqu'à       | even to       |
| Au lieu de | instead of  | Loin de       | far from      |
| Plutôt     | rather than | A moins de    | unless,       |

as do all prepositions ending with *de*.

No

No preposition is so frequently used in English as the preposition *with*, which is not always rendered into French by its correspondent word *avec*. Therefore *with* is translated by *avec* only in these two occasions:

*First*; When it implies company;

J'ai voyagé avec eux | I travelled with them.

*2dly*; When it denotes the manner or means of doing an action, and *with* used in this sense may be rendered also by the preposition *par*:

|                       |  |                       |
|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Elle danse avec grace |  | She dances with grace |
| Il nous trompa avec,  |  | He deceived us with   |
| or par adresse        |  | art.                  |

In any other case the preposition *with* must be expressed in French by the indefinite article *de*:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Je suis content de mes |  | I am contented with   |
| écoliers               |  | my scholars           |
| La victime étoit cou-  |  | The victim was crown- |
| ronnée de fleurs       |  | ed with flowers       |
| Une chambre tapissée   |  | A room covered with   |
| de damas cramoisi      |  | crimson damask.       |

Prepositions



Prepositions having their regimen immediately after them, without any article, are to be repeated before each noun or verb: -

|                                                                 |                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Je fais cela par inclination, par devoir, et par reconnoissance | I do this out of inclination, duty, and gratitude. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|

And here we must take notice, that whenever the English words *out of* denote the reason for which something is done, they must be translated in French by *par*, and not by *hors de*, which would have a meaning quite different from the English expressions:

|                                                    |                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Il ne s'y opposa point par le respect du au Prince | He did not oppose it out of respect to the Prince. |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|





## CH A P. VIII.

### *Of the CONJUNCTION.*

**A** Conjunction serves in both languages to connect or join together words with words, and also phrases with phrases in a sentence, as we have seen in the first part. Among the French conjunctions which require the next verb in the conjunctive mood, these are the most frequently used:

|                |              |                |           |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|-----------|
| Quoique        | although     | A fin que      | that      |
| A moins que    | unless       | Avant que      | before    |
| De peur que    | for-fear     | Soit que       | whether   |
| De crainte que | that or lest | Jusqu'à ce que | until     |
| Pourvu que     | provided     | Loin que       | far from. |

The conjunction *que*, (that) when used alone, or simply, does not always require the next verb in the conjunctive mood, as learners sometimes believe.

It governs the next verb in the indicative, when the verb denotes affirmation, belief,

belief, or certainty, without a negation or interrogation; and in the conjunctive when the verb implies doubt, ignorance, uncertainty, or future action, as we have observed in speaking of the indicative and conjunctive moods, wherein this matter has been fully treated.

We sometimes make use of the conjunction *que* instead of some other conjunctions, but more particularly of those whereof *que* makes a part. In this case the verb is put in the indicative, when *que* supplies the place of a conjunction which implies that mood:

|                         |  |                      |
|-------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Puisque vous êtes las,  |  | Since you are tired, |
| et que vous n'avez      |  | and have nothing to  |
| rien à faire allez vous |  | do, go home;         |
| en chez vous            |  |                      |

and is used in the conjunctive, if *que* supply the place of a conjunction which requires the conjunctive:

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Je ne serai point con- |  | I shall never be con- |
| tent que je ne le      |  | tented unless I know  |
| fache                  |  | it                    |

Je

|                         |  |                         |
|-------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Je n'irai point qu'elle |  | I will not go there at  |
| ne soit venue           |  | all before she be come; |

where *que* is used instead of *à moins que* and *avant que*, which will have the particle negative *ne* between them and the next verb.

The conjunction *que*, whether it be attended by an indicative or a conjunctive, must be repeated before each member of a sentence, as also always expressed in French, though *that* is frequently omitted or understood in English:

|                        |  |                     |
|------------------------|--|---------------------|
| J'entends dire qu'elle |  | I hear she is gone, |
| est partie, et qu'elle |  | and will not come   |
| ne reviendra pas a-    |  | again before Easter |
| vant la Paque          |  |                     |

|                          |  |                            |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| Je crois qu'il a raison  |  | I think he is in the right |
| Il semble qu'elle a tort |  | It seems she is in the     |
|                          |  | wrong.                     |

The conjunction *que* is sometimes used after a noun of time or place in the sense of *où*, (in which or wherein:)

|                       |  |                        |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------|
| Le jour que nous par- |  | The day in which we    |
| times                 |  | set out                |
| C'est à la cour qu'on |  | It is at court that we |
| apprend la politesse  |  | learn politeness.      |



The conjunction *as* is generally rendered into French by *comme*; but when used in the sense of *when* is expressed by *quand*:

|                         |  |                      |
|-------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Quand il arriva à l'age |  | As he arrived at the |
| de seize ans            |  | age of sixteen.      |

*As*, used after *such*, is translated by *que*:

|                     |  |                    |
|---------------------|--|--------------------|
| Il mourut tel qu'il |  | He died such as he |
| vecut               |  | lived.             |

The particle *so*, which is rendered into French by *si* or *aussi*, is construed in English in a peculiar manner; as,

She is in *so* weak a condition, that &c.

whereas in French we make use of the numeral noun *un*, attended by the noun substantive, and both go before the particle *si* or *aussi* and the adjective; and we say,

Elle est dans un état *si*, or *aussi*, foible que &c.

It is the same with the adjective *tel* or *telle*, (*such*) which must be used in French after *un* or *une* (a):

|                       |  |                    |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------|
| Avec une telle condi- |  | With such a condi- |
| tion                  |  | tion.              |

The French word *encore* is an adverb when it signifies *again*, *yet*, or *still*, but is a conjunction copulative when it means *even*, *also*, *else*, or *besides*.

The word *for*, in English, is not always expressed in French in the same manner, because it has three significations: therefore it is rendered into French by *car* when it is a conjunction, connecting together two members of a sentence; as,

|                        |  |                       |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Je ne pus pas y aller, |  | I could not go there, |
| car j'avois un autre   |  | for I was pre-engag-  |
| engagement             |  | ged;                  |

by *pour* when it is a preposition, which is always attended by a noun or pronoun to make a complete sense in the sentence; as,

|                          |  |                      |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------|
| Elle le fit pour l'amour |  | She did it for God's |
| de DIEU                  |  | fake;                |

and by *pendant* when *for* is followed by a noun denoting time or part of time; as,

|                     |  |                        |
|---------------------|--|------------------------|
| Je demeurai à Paris |  | I resided in Paris for |
| pendant vingt ans   |  | twenty years.          |

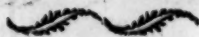
CHAP.



## CHAP. IX.

### *Of the INTERJECTION.*

**A**S interjections, both in French and English, are an indeclinable part of speech, consisting of a very few words thrown between the parts of a sentence, and making a sense of themselves, without being liable to any rule with respect to the variation, construction, and concord or agreement, there is nothing to be observed concerning this matter, whose use is the same in both languages. We may add only, that among the French interjections some are expressed by the same particles as in English, and some cannot be literally translated from the one language into the other, though they are used in the same cases, because all nations in general have a peculiar manner of expressing their different passions.



*Of*

*Of the CONSTRUCTION and Use of NEGATIVE WORDS.*

In a negative sentence we generally make use in French of two negative words; as,

Ne...pas | not      || Ne...point | not at all.

The negative particle *ne* always comes after the noun or pronoun in the nominative case, denoting the subject, and immediately before the verb, and the second negative word *pas* or *point* after the verb, which consequently is put between two negative particles, if the tense be simple:

Je ne crois pas cela | I do not believe it;  
and if the tense be compound, the auxiliary is put between the two negative words, the last of which is followed by a participle:

Il ne fut point connu | He was not known at all.

However, when the verb is in the present of the infinitive mood, the two ne-

H h

gatives



gatives come together before it, and after the preposition:

|                      |  |                        |
|----------------------|--|------------------------|
| Je vous ai dit de ne |  | I have told you not to |
| pas or point parler  |  | Speak.                 |

Although the negative particles *pas* and *point* may appear to be synonymous, yet the negative *point* in reality denies with more emphasis than the negative *pas*.

#### The French Conjunctions,

A moins que | de crainte que | de peur que, will have after them the particle negative *ne* alone before the next verb, as well as these three verbs;

Empecher | craindre | apprehender; after which the next verb must be in the conjunctive mood:

|                       |  |                        |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------|
| A moins que vous ne   |  | Unless you will have   |
| voulez ainsi          |  | it so                  |
| J'empêcherai qu'il ne |  | I will hinder him from |
| vous nuise            |  | hurting you.           |

But when any of the above verbs is used in the infinitive, no negative is joined with it.

And

And here we must observe with respect to the verbs of fearing, that it is only when we speak of an effect not wished for, that the second negative *pas* or *point* is left out after the next verb:

|                        |  |                        |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Il craint que sa femme |  | He fears that his wife |
| ne meure               |  | should die:            |

For if we wish that the thing in question should happen, then the verb denoting fear must be attended by the negative *pas* or *point*:

|                        |  |                        |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Il craint que sa femme |  | He fears that his wife |
| ne meure pas           |  | should not die.        |

The negative particle *ne* is also used alone before the verb that comes after any of these words, which are of themselves negative terms:

|                       |  |                        |           |          |  |         |
|-----------------------|--|------------------------|-----------|----------|--|---------|
| Plus                  |  | moins                  |           | mieux    |  | rien    |
| Autre                 |  | aucun                  |           | personne |  | jamais  |
| Aucunement            |  |                        | autrement |          |  | gueres; |
| Elle est plus sincere |  | She is more open       |           |          |  |         |
| qu'il ne faudroit     |  | than she should be     |           |          |  |         |
| Je ne l'ai jamais vue |  | I have never seen her  |           |          |  |         |
| Il ne m'a rien dit    |  | He said nothing to me. |           |          |  |         |

The particle negative *ne*, without any other negative, is likewise used with these verbs, applied in a negative sense:

|                               |                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ofer   prendre garde   cesser |                       |
| Prenez garde qu'il ne         | Take care he does not |
| vous trompe                   | deceive you           |
| Il n'osa repondre             | He did not dare to    |
|                               | answer                |
| Elle ne cessa de sou-         | She did not cease to  |
| pirer                         | sigh.                 |

And before the verb which precedes the particle negative *ni*, (neither or nor) repeated in the sentence:

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Je n'aime ni à boire ni | I like neither to drink |
| à fumer                 | nor to smoke.           |

But when there is no verb before *neither*, this English negative is translated by *ne* only, and *nor* by *ni ne*:

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Je ne bois, ni ne fume | I neither drink nor |
|                        | smoke.              |

The French use the negative *ne*, without the second negative, only after the impersonal verb *il y a*, followed by a verb in the perfect indefinite:

Il y a deux ans que je | I have not seen my fa-  
n'ai vu mon père | ther these two years.

But if any other tense come after this  
impersonal, they use the two negatives;  
and say,

Il y a deux ans que je | It is two years I have  
ne le vois point | not seen him.

The English word *but* is translated by  
*mais*, when it is a conjunction, as we  
have seen before:

Cette fille lit bien, | This girl reads well,  
mais elle écrit mal | but writes ill:

But if the word *but* be used in English in  
the middle of a sentence adverbially,  
without joining its members or parts,  
and the words applied both before and  
after the word *but* do not make a com-  
plete sense, it is rendered into French by  
*ne* and *que*, which signify also *nothing but*,  
or *only*, and the verb is to be put between  
the negative *ne* and the particle *que*, with-  
out *pas* or *point*:

H h 3

Je



|                                           |                                             |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Je n'y consens qu'avec<br>cette condition | I consent to it but with<br>this condition. |
| Il ne fait que jouer                      | He does nothing but<br>play                 |
| Elle ne faisoit qu'un<br>repas par jour   | She made only one<br>meal a day.            |

The negative *ne*, as we have observed, comes immediately before the verb; but when any pronoun conjunctive or relative is used in the sentence, the pronoun is put between the negative and the verb, and *pas* or *point* always comes after it:

|                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Il ne me parle jamais  | He never speaks to me      |
| Ne vous fachez pas     | Be not angry               |
| Elle ne les aime point | She does not love<br>them, |

The English negative word *not* is sometimes rendered into French by *non pas*, used absolutely in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by the conjunction *que*, with a tense of the conjunctive mood:

|                                         |                                         |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Non pas que la chose<br>soit impossible | I do not mean that it<br>is impossible. |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|

When the verb *savoir* is used in the  
sense

sense of the verb *pouvoir*, it requires only the negative *ne*:

Ils ne sauroient marcher | They cannot walk.

The verb *prendre garde* does not require any negative after it when the next verb is in the infinitive mood, though the English expression *to take care* is used with the negative *not* before the next infinitive:

Prenez garde de tomber | Take care not to fall.

If *rien* (nothing) be the subject of the verb, the negative *ne* comes between *rien* and the verb:

Rien ne fut jamais si | Nothing was ever so  
choquant | shocking,

But when *rien* is the object of the verb, the negative *ne* comes before the verb, and *rien* after it:

Je ne dit rien de tout | I say nothing at all;  
and if *rien* be the regimen of a preposition, no negative is used with it:

Il le fait pour rien | He does it for nothing.

Of

*Of the METHOD of ASKING QUESTIONS.*

It is usual in French, among polite well-bred people, particularly in speaking to one in a higher station, or to whom we wish to shew a particular respect, to make use of the pronouns of the third person;

Il *or* elle | Ils *or* elles,  
instead of that of the second person *vous*;  
and we say,

Comment se porte | How do you do Ma-  
Madame? | dam?  
instead of

Comment vous portez vous Madame?  
Monsieur a-t-il bien | Sir, how have you  
passé la nuit? | passed the night?  
instead of

Comment avez vous passé la nuit?

It has been before observed, that when a question is asked with the pronoun of the first person *je*, this pronoun comes after the verb; as,

Suis-je? | ai-je? | entend-je?

In

In addition to which we must observe, that in verbs of the first conjugation, wherein the first person ends in *e* not founded, that *e* is changed into *é* close before the pronoun *je*, which ends also in *e* silent; and we say,

Aimé-je? | do I love? || Chanté-je? | do I sing?  
instead of

Aime-je? | Chante-je?

But a question cannot be asked in this manner with some verbs, especially with these five;

Mentir | perdre | rompre | sentir | dormir;  
Therefore in the case of these verbs the question must be stated in a different manner; as,

|                           |  |                     |
|---------------------------|--|---------------------|
| Est-ce que je ments?      |  | Do I tell a lie?    |
| Croyez vous que je ments? |  | Do you think I lie? |

The method of asking questions by *est-ce que* is of great use in French, but serves less to seek simply information concerning any thing, than to assure others that  
we



we do not require to be informed of it,  
or the case is not as they think; as also  
to intimate a surprize at an unexpected  
event, or a fear of a future evil. When  
I say for instance,

Pleut-il? | Does it rain?

I only want to know whether it rains  
or not; but if I say,

Est ce qu'il pleut?

I besides shew my surprize at it; as if we  
said, in English,

It does not rain: does it?

Again; when I say for instance,

A-t-il du jugement? | Has he understanding?

I merely enquire about the state of his  
judgment; but if I say,

Est ce qu'il a du juge- | He has no under-  
ment? | standing: has he?

I intimate that I know he has no judg-  
ment, or at least I doubt of it, and won-  
der that he should be supposed to have  
any. And when I say,

Viendra-t-il? | Will he come?

I only

I only put a plain question; but if I say,

*Est ce qu'il viendra?*

I shew a surprize at or fear of his coming.

The same question, with a negative, (*n'est ce pas que*) signifies always that we take that for certain which is the subject of the question, and want only the concurrence of other men's opinions as a confirmation of our own.

Observe here, that the expression (*n'est ce pas?*) may equally as well begin as end the sentence, with this difference, that when it begins the sentence, it is always followed by the conjunction *que*, connecting it with the rest of the sentence:

*N'est ce pas qu'il pleut?* | Does it rain?

*Il pleut, n'est ce pas?* | It rains, does it not?

In asking a question of time, or distance of place, beginning with *how long* or *how far* in English, we cannot say in French,

*Comment long tems, nor comment loin,*

but

but in both cases we make use of the adverb *combien*, and the impersonal *il y a*; thus,

|                                            |                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Combien y a-t-il que<br>vous demeurez ici? | How long have you<br>lived here?     |
| Combien y a-t-il de<br>Paris à Rome?       | How far is it from<br>Paris to Rome? |

and the answer must be made by the same verb *il y a*, joined to the noun of time or place:

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Il y a six ans            | Six years              |
| Il y a trois cents lieues | Three hundred leagues. |

And here we may take occasion of observing, that whenever a verb, interrogatively used, ends with a vowel, we always put the consonant *t* with one hyphen before and another after it, (thus *-t-*,) between the verb and any of the pronouns personal *il* and *elle*:

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Arriva-t-il seul?           | Did he arrive alone?       |
| L'aime-t-elle?              | Does she love him?         |
| Viendra-t-elle avec<br>lui? | Will she come with<br>him? |

In

In answering to a question, the French do not permit any thing understood, nor make use of the uncommon conciseness implied in English.

If any body puts these questions;

Have you seen the assembly-rooms?

Did he speak about her?

Will you go to the play?

they will merely answer in referring to what has been said before; thus,

I have | I have not | he did | he did not

I will | I will not;

whereas we repeat, in French, the sense of what has been already spoken of; and we say,

Je les ai vues | il en parla | j'y irai;

literally,

I have seen them | he spoke of her

I will go there.

*Of the Pronominal Particle ON.*

The particle *on* answers to the several English pronominal words,

One



• One | we | they | people | a man.

It is called a general and indeterminate particle, because it is always used in a vague unspecified sense when we mean to speak without alluding to any one particular person; as for instance,

On croiroit aisément | One would easily believe.

Besides, the particle *on* signifies sometimes *it*: in this case the verb, which is in English in the passive voice, is to be changed in French into the active; and, as the passive voice is seldom used in French, the noun or pronoun which is the subject of the passive verb in English must be the object of the active verb in French:

|                       |  |                         |
|-----------------------|--|-------------------------|
| On y rapporte une     |  | A very strange story is |
| histoire bien étrange |  | related there           |
| On entendoit un grand |  | A great noise was       |
| bruit                 |  | heard                   |
| On lui avoit fait une |  | Injustice had been      |
| injustice             |  | done to him.            |

We sometimes make use of the pronoun relative *le*, with an elision on the *e*, before

e, before the particle *on*, (thus, l'on): In this case the pronoun *le* has no signification at all, and is used only for the sake of better harmony, where two vowels would otherwise disagreeably clash and produce an unpleasant sound, or confuse by any means the sense; the ear must on such occasions be consulted:

Si l'on me connoit | If I be known.

When the particle *on* occurs in a sentence in which there are many verbs, it must be repeated before each verb:

On dansa, on joua, on | We danced, played,  
chanta, et on soupa | sang, and supped.

*An easy METHOD of learning a great many  
thousand FRENCH WORDS.*

Although the French language differs considerably from the English in the construction of sentences, use of the parts of speech, and signification of terms, as we have fully observed through  
all

all this treatise; however, there is no language which has so great a conformity and reference to the French, with respect to the denomination of words, as the English, wherein there are a great many thousand words which are also French without the least alteration, as one may plainly see by the following nouns, which we give here as an instance, and by the subsequent observations:

|            |          |          |          |
|------------|----------|----------|----------|
| Affront    | Cabinet  | Coquette | Divers   |
| Air        | Camp     | Credit   | Divorce  |
| Alum       | Canal    | Crime    | Dome     |
| Ample      | Cause    | Cruel    | Dose     |
| Arfenal    | Certain  | Crystal  | Duel     |
| Art        | Chagrin  | Cure     | Dupe     |
| Article    | Champion | Danger   | Eclipse  |
| Aspect     | Change   | Date     | Effort   |
| Affassin   | Charge   | Delicate | Elephant |
| Attractive | Chaste   | Deluge   | Empire   |
| Baron      | Civil    | Desert   | Environs |
| Blame      | College  | Detail   | Essence  |
| Branches   | Combat   | Disciple | Exact    |
| Brave      | Commerce | Disgrace | Excuse   |
| Bureau     | Concert  | Dispute  | Exempt   |
|            |          |          | Exercise |

|           |            |             |            |
|-----------|------------|-------------|------------|
| Exercise  | Insect     | Oracle      | Prince     |
| Exploit   | Instant    | Orange      | Princesses |
| Extreme   | Instinct   | Pale        | Privilege  |
| Face      | Intrigue   | Pardon      | Prose      |
| Fagot     | Leopard    | Paricide    | Province   |
| Fatigue   | Lieutenant | Patron      | Public     |
| Farce     | Lion       | Pause       | Pupil      |
| Fibre     | Long       | Pedant      | Pure       |
| Filial    | Machine    | Pelican     | Race       |
| Flambeau  | Marquis    | Perspective | Rage       |
| Flute     | Martyr     | Peril       | Rampart    |
| Force     | Melon      | Phrase      | Ragout     |
| Fort      | Mine       | Piece       | Rat        |
| Fortune   | Minute     | Pigeon      | Refuge     |
| Fruit     | Miracle    | Pile        | Regret     |
| Gain      | Mitre      | Pilot       | Reins      |
| Globe     | Mule       | Pinnacle    | Reptile    |
| Grace     | Muscle     | Place       | Reserve    |
| Grain     | Narrative  | Plan        | Respect    |
| Grandeur  | Nitre      | Point       | Reverend   |
| Grimace   | Noble      | Poison      | Ridicule   |
| Grotesque | Note       | Pore        | Robe       |
| Guide     | Notice     | Port        | Rude       |
| Harangue  | Obscene    | Portrait    | Sabre      |
| Humble    | Obscure    | Pot         | Saint      |
| Immenſe   | Obſtacle   | Precept     | Satin      |
| Impure    | Olive      | Preface     | Sauce      |
| Injure    | Opera      | Prefage     | Scene      |



|         |           |         |           |
|---------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| Secret  | Sole      | Suicide | Torrent   |
| Serge   | Source    | Supreme | Trace     |
| Sermon  | Spectacle | Surface | Transport |
| Serpent | Sphere    | Surtout | Tripe     |
| Severe  | Stable    | Temple  | Turbot    |
| Simple  | Statue    | Theatre | Vice      |
| Sincere | Style     | Theme   | Vile      |
| Sire    | Sublime   | Throne  | Volume.   |

All nouns substantive, ending with the following terminations, are both French and English;

|                 |            |             |             |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| In <i>al</i>    | Capital    | Animal      | Metal       |
| In <i>ance</i>  | Ignorance  | Distance    | Elegance    |
| In <i>ction</i> | Action     | Perfection  | Objection   |
| In <i>ence</i>  | Science    | Experience  | Innocence   |
| In <i>ent</i>   | Accident   | Talent      | Sentiment   |
| In <i>ice</i>   | Sacrifice  | Office      | Justice     |
| In <i>ine</i>   | Famine     | Doctrine    | Discipline  |
| In <i>ion</i>   | Union      | Religion    | Opinion     |
| In <i>ption</i> | Corruption | Description | Exception   |
| In <i>sion</i>  | Occasion   | Decision    | Confusion   |
| In <i>tion</i>  | Nation     | Education   | Intention   |
| In <i>ude</i>   | Solitude   | Multitude   | Ingratitude |
| In <i>ure</i>   | Nature     | Figure      | Creature.   |

Most nouns substantive ending in *age* are also French and English:

Courage

Courage | image | village | assemblage.

All nouns adjective ending with the following terminations are both French and English:

|                |           |          |              |
|----------------|-----------|----------|--------------|
| In <i>able</i> | Admirable | Capable  | Considerable |
| In <i>al</i>   | Principal | General  | Fatal        |
| In <i>ant</i>  | Important | Vigilant | Constant     |
| In <i>ent</i>  | Diligent  | Violent  | Evident      |
| In <i>ible</i> | Sensible  | Possible | Visible      |
| In <i>ive</i>  | Native    | Decisive | Excessive.   |

Besides, there are a great many thousand words more which become French by a very little alteration, as may be seen by the following observations.

A great number of English nouns become French by adding to them the vowel *e*; such as,

|         |        |         |          |
|---------|--------|---------|----------|
| Artiste | chaine | demande | maxime   |
| Victime | merite | juste   | origine; |

and a great many become French by striking out the final vowel *e*; such as,

|        |      |          |        |
|--------|------|----------|--------|
| Apetit | cas  | discours | plat   |
| Tribut | sens | abus     | desir. |

English nouns ending in *y* become French by changing the letter *y* into *ie*; such as,

Academie | comedie | harmonie | tyrannie.

All English nouns ending in *ty* become French by changing the letter *y* into *é*, marked over with an acute accent; such as,

|          |           |            |           |
|----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Capacité | fobriété  | société    | beauté    |
| Charité  | curiosité | difficulté | humanité. |

All English nouns ending in *er* are made French by changing the termination *er* into *re*; such as,

|             |         |          |          |
|-------------|---------|----------|----------|
| Ministre    | lettre  | decembre | offre    |
| Interpretre | chambre | ordre    | monstre. |

Nouns ending in English in *ory* become French by changing the termination *ry* into *ire*; such as,

Gloire | mémoire | histoire | victoire.

All nouns ending in English in *or*, or in *our*, are made French by changing the terminations *or* or *our* into *eur*; such as,

Empereur

|          |  |         |  |            |  |            |
|----------|--|---------|--|------------|--|------------|
| Empereur |  | docteur |  | successeur |  | possesseur |
| Faveur   |  | humeur  |  | vapeur     |  | splendeur. |

Nouns ending in English in *ancy* or *ency* become French by changing the *y* into *e* mute:

Constance | vacance | decence | clemence.

All English adjectives which end in *ous* are made French by changing *ous* into *eux*; such as,

|             |  |         |  |           |  |           |
|-------------|--|---------|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Ambitieux   |  | curieux |  | dangereux |  | genereux  |
| Industrieux |  | serieux |  | precieux  |  | studieux. |

Some English adjectives ending in *al* are made French by changing *al* into *el*; such as,

Naturel | spirituel | essentiel | universel.

Some others ending in *ar* are terminated in French in *ier*; such as,

Regulier | familier | particulier | singulier.

Adjectives ending in English in *ary*, become French if we change the termination *ary* into *aire*; as,

Contraire | militaire | solitaire | necessaire.

Nouns,



Nouns, both substantive and adjective, ending in English in *ian* are terminated in French in *ien*; such as,

Musicien | Historien | Italien | Parisien.

And the nouns, both substantive and adjective, which end in English in *ic* or in *ical* are terminated in French in *ique*; such as,

Musique | colique | despotique | heroique.

Moreover, when in English verbs ending in *ate*, *sh*, *fy*, *ze*, we change these terminations into *er*, *r*, *fier*, *ser*, such verbs become French; as,

|          |  |        |  |           |  |           |
|----------|--|--------|--|-----------|--|-----------|
| Imiter   |  | abolir |  | mortifier |  | civiliser |
| Celebrer |  | finir  |  | justifier |  | analiser. |

If we add the syllable *ner* to the English verbs ending in *on*, and the letter *r* to those which end with *e*, they are also French; such as,

|             |  |         |  |          |  |          |
|-------------|--|---------|--|----------|--|----------|
| Pardonner   |  | diner   |  | proposer |  | inspirer |
| Occasionner |  | excuser |  | arriver  |  | obliger. |

Among the English verbs which end with a consonant most of them become

come French by adding the syllable *er*;  
such as,

|          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| Acceptor | affirmer | aider     | alarmer   |
| Affister | charmer  | consulter | demandeur |
| Informer | passer   | inventer  | toucher;  |

some by the addition of the syllable *re*;  
such as,

Pretendre | defendre | dependre | suspendre;  
and some others by adding the syllable *ir*;  
such as,

Consentir | applaudir | repentir | enrichir.

Lastly; if we change the syllable *ly*,  
in most English adverbs, into *ment*, they  
become French; as

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| Immediatement | Successivement |
| Extremement   | Sincerement.   |

